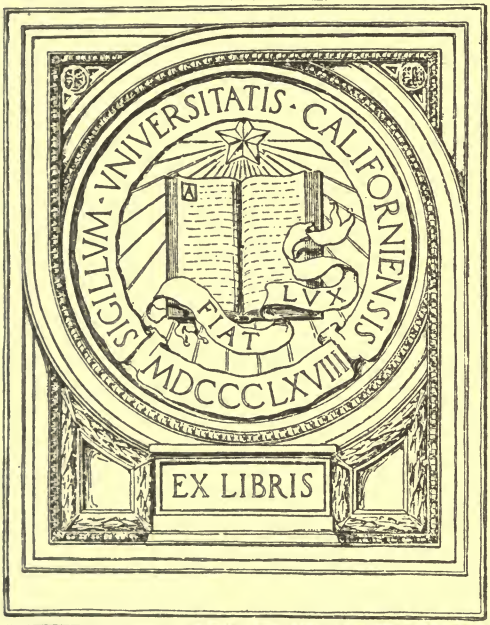
ELEMENTARY LATIN WRITING

CLARA B. JORDAN

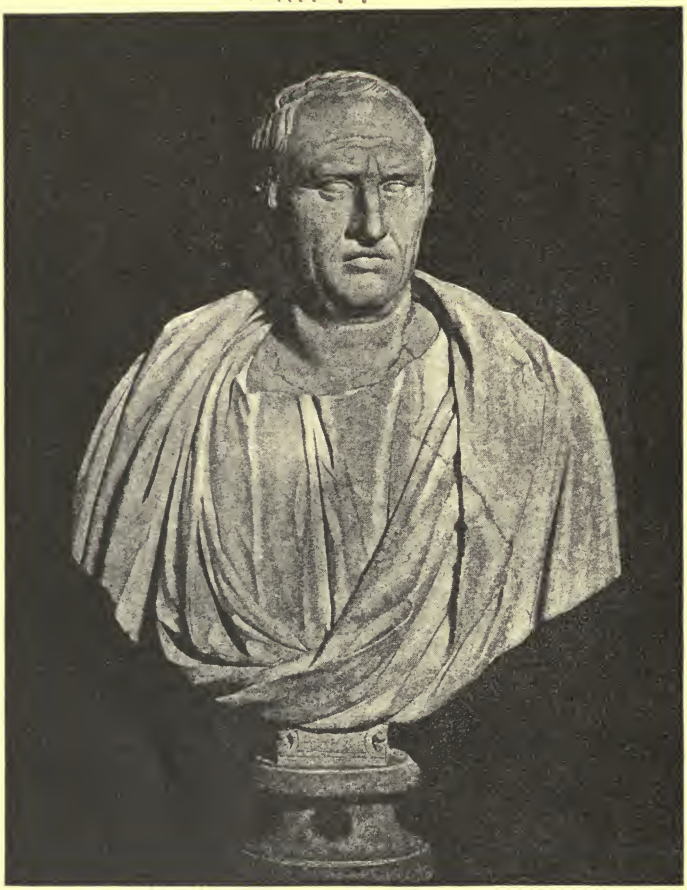
GIFT OF


SIGILLVM · VNIVERSITATIS · CALIFORNIENSIS
LVX
FIAT
MDCCCLXVIII
EX LIBRIS

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/elementarylatinw00jordrich

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA



CICERO

"Great natural rhetorical gifts, conscientiously and devotedly cultivated, commanded for him a success in style which has left permanent traces of its supremacy not only in all future writings in Latin, but even in those of our own language and country.

"Nor is Cicero unworthy of consideration as a man. You feel the force of the soul through the beauty of the style. You see the man in the writer, the nation in the man, and the universe at the feet of the nation."

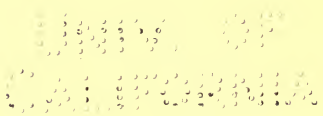
ELEMENTARY

LATIN WRITING

BY

CLARA B. JORDAN

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN
HUGHES HIGH SCHOOL, CINCINNATI



AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO

Copyright, 1905, by
CLARA B. JORDAN.

ELEMENTARY LATIN WRITING.

E-P 2

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

PREFACE

Elementary Latin Writing assumes that the pupil has studied Latin one year, and is ready to make use of the regular forms of the Latin language. The book is planned for the second, third, and fourth years' work in secondary schools.

In the arrangement of topics the aim has been to follow in some degree the order in which these are presented in Latin grammars. Rules of syntax from recent grammars precede the different exercises. The references to the articles on syntax and the suggestions following the Exercises are intended to aid the pupil in expressing thoughts, not words, and to guide him to correct sentence construction.

The English sentences have been collected from so many different sources that it is impossible to give individual acknowledgment. These have in many cases been selected not only to illustrate a Latin principle, but also to make more intelligible a fact or a reference frequently met by the pupil in his reading.

Personal experience has shown that in the translating of sentences of this kind, rather than of those taken directly from the authors read it is possible for the student to learn to imitate the *style* of Caesar or Cicero without *copying* the exact words of either of these authors.

The selection of simple sentences for the work of the second year and a part of the third year has been intentional. These sentences may, however, at the pleasure of

291045

the teacher, be combined into periodic sentences. During the third year the separate sentences are dropped and the pupil begins connected Latin writing.

Special study of conditional sentences and of indirect discourse is intentionally omitted from the second year's work and reserved for the third year, when, after a year's study of Caesar, the pupil is better prepared for these subjects, which he always seems to dread.

In the selection of quotations, pages 212–231, the aim has been to bring together in logical order the different declensions, classes of pronouns, verbs, etc., so that these may be used for a constant review of forms.

A vocabulary has been added at the suggestion of many teachers of Latin, to save time for the beginner in his search for a word. Words and forms, however, are not the only essentials of Latin writing. The pupil should remember that two peoples seldom express the same thought in the same way. Therefore, to write in Latin, he must observe both how the Romans expressed their own thoughts and how they would probably have expressed our thoughts.

I regret that I cannot thank personally the many whose works I have used very freely, and to whom I am, therefore, under many obligations.

My thanks are due to Dr. E. W. Coy, Principal of Hughes High School, for advice and suggestions.

CLARA B. JORDAN.

CONTENTS

[The references in the exercises and in the vocabulary are to the articles on syntax.]

PAGE

GENERAL STATEMENTS 11

USES OF NOUNS 14

THE NOMINATIVE 16

THE GENITIVE 17
Exercises 1–3.

THE DATIVE 24
Exercises 4–6.

THE ACCUSATIVE 30
Exercises 7, 8.

USES OF THE WORD *as* 35

THE ABLATIVE 38
Exercises 9–14.

USES OF ADJECTIVES 49
Exercises 15–21.

USES OF PRONOUNS 63
Exercises 22–26.

QUESTIONS 80

INDIRECT QUESTIONS 83
Exercises 27–30.

IMPERATIVE MODE 89

NEGATIVE COMMANDS 91
Exercise 31.

INFINITIVE MODE 93
Exercise 32.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES 97

SUPINES 100
Exercises 33, 34.

FINAL SENTENCES 103
Exercises 35–37.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES 107
Exercise 38.

PAGE

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES 110
Exercises 39–43.

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE 120

TEMPORAL CLAUSES 121

CAUSAL CLAUSES 124

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES 125

PROVISO CLAUSES 127

NEGATIVE FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES 127

TENSE 127

RENDERING OF *may*, *can*, *must*, *ought*, *might*, *would*, *let*, etc. . . 128

CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING 130

CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF PREVENTING, HINDERING, REFUSING, ETC. 131

CONSTRUCTION WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT 131

WORD LISTS 132

PARTICIPLES 135
Exercises 44–46.

ADVERBS 144

PREPOSITIONS 148

CONJUNCTIONS 157

ROMAN DATES 163
Exercises 47, 48.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE 166
Exercises 49–51.

ROMAN NAMES 174

LETTERS 175

GENERAL EXERCISES.

52. Marathon 177
53. Philip of Macedon 177
54. Alexander the Great 178
55. Alexander the Great 179
56. Hannibal 179
57. Hannibal 180
58. Hannibal 180
59. Hannibal 181
60. Hannibal 182

PAGE

61. Caius Julius Caesar 182
62. Caius Julius Caesar 183
63. Caius Julius Caesar 184
64. Caius Julius Caesar 184
65. Caius Julius Caesar 185
66. Marcus Tullius Cicero (against Catiline) 186
67. Marcus Tullius Cicero 187
68. Marcus Tullius Cicero 187
69. Marcus Tullius Cicero 188
70. Marcus Tullius Cicero 189
71. Cornelius Sulla 190
72. Murena 190
73. Mithridatic War 191
74. Mithridatic War 192
75. Mithridatic War 192
76. Mithridatic War 193
77. Mithridatic War 194
78. Lucullus and Pompey 194
79. Lucullus 195
80. Pompey 196
81. Aulus Gabinius Archias 197
82. Aulus Gabinius Archias 197
83. Aulus Gabinius Archias 198
84. Marcus Antonius and Cicero 199
85. Publius Virgilius Maro 200
86. Publius Virgilius Maro 200
87. Paris, Son of Priam 201
88. Greek Leaders in the Trojan War 202
89. The Capture of Troy 202
90. The Country of the Aeneid 203
91. Mt. Olympus 204
92. Tartarus 204
93. Charon 205
94. Cerberus 206
95. Laocoön 206
96. Letter from Cicero to Atticus 207
97. Letter from Cicero to Terentia 208
98. Letter from Cicero to Atticus 209
99. Letter from Cicero to Atticus 210
100. Letter from Cicero to Terentia 211

QUOTATIONS 212

VOCABULARY 232

H = Harkness' Complete Latin Grammar, references to Harkness' Standard Grammar being inclosed in parentheses. LM = Lane-Morgan. A = Allen and Greenough. G = Gildersleeve. B = Bennett.

ELEMENTARY LATIN WRITING

1. "True ease in writing comes from art, not chance."

We are apt to think that the many happy expressions found in the writings of the great masters are the result of genius alone. Not so, however, for much labor is required in the selecting of words and expressions, and in the combining of them in such a way as to produce the most artistic and forcible effect.

2. In English, since it is not an inflected language, the arrangement of words is somewhat definitely fixed according to rules of syntax. In Latin, however, because of its inflected forms, a word, with the exception of a few particles, may take almost any position in a sentence.

3. The natural order of a Latin sentence in which no special emphasis is to be expressed is — Subject, Object, Verb, each with its modifiers.

4. In a sentence of the following type, the emphasis may be produced in Latin by the order of the words; in English, by italicizing them:

Puer sorōrem vocat, the boy is calling his sister.
Sorōrem puer vocat, the boy is calling his *sister*.
Vocat puer sorōrem, the boy is *calling* his sister.
Sorōrem vocat puer, the *boy* is calling his sister.

5. The Romans considered the beginning and the end the important positions in a sentence.

6. Interrogatives naturally occupy the first place in a sentence, but they are sometimes placed after one or more emphatic words.

7. Among the words which do not stand first in a sentence are **autem, enim, quidem, quoque, tamen, vērō, quis** the Indefinite Pronoun after **sī, nisi, nē, num.**

8. Precision requires that a sentence should begin with the word most intimately connected with the thought of the preceding sentence.

9. Let your sentence end with a word that is essential both to the construction and the thought to be expressed.

By changing the place of **ad eum mittere**, and arranging Caesar's sentence (Bk. 1, 47) as follows: **Commodissimum vīsum est ad eum mittere Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, — cuius pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, — et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset**, we find that, without violating the construction, we may stop with **Procillum**, or **fīlium**, or **adulēscentem**, or **erat**, or **scientiam**, or **ūtēbātur**, or **esset.**

With Caesar's arrangement one is obliged to go to the word **mittere**, which with **ad eum** follows **nōn esset**, before he can get the thought.

10. Bring together words that are logically connected:

Nūntiātum est eī *Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs* ad occupandum Vesontiōnem contendere.

***Is, sē praesente*, dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat.**

Deōrum immortālium *summō ergā vōs* amōre.

In hāc īnsolitā mihi ex hōc locō ratiōne dīcendī. Change the order of these words of Cicero, and we lose the thought, that Cicero is appearing before the people for the first time as praetor.

11. When several pronouns are used in the same sentence, they should be brought near to one another, as should words of like derivation. This the Romans did to show contrast.

Videō enim esse hīc in senātū *quōsdam quī tēcum* ūnā fuērunt.

Alius aliā **causā inlātā.**

Sed ut tum ad *senem senex* dē *senectūte*, sīc hōc librō ad *amīcum amīcissimus* scrīpsī dē *amīcitiā*.

Huic ego mē **bellō ducem profiteor.**

12. Give a prominent person or thing a prominent position in a Latin sentence:

Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit, it was he who formed a conspiracy during the consulship of Messala and Piso.

Cum lūxuriā nōbīs certandum est, it is with high-living (high livers) that we have to fight.

13. Remember that translation of Latin words into English words, or English words into Latin words, rarely produces correct sentence constructions. In transferring a sentence from one language to the other, the thought must be reproduced.

Rērum gestārum scrīptor erat, sed autem in rē pūblicā dīrigendā nōn versābātur, he was a historian, not a statesman.

Pauca locūtus discessit, after a few remarks, he left.

Cum perīculō lēgātum mīsērunt, the sending of an ambassador was attended with much danger.

Sērō tē factī paenitet, you feel sorry for what you have done, but it is too late.

14. A cause, an inference, etc., often implied in English is to be expressed in Latin:

Vōs tunc pāruistis, cum pāruit nēmō quī nōluit. Reprehendō *igitur?* Minimē vērō. You obeyed orders at a time at which no one obeyed unless he wished to do so. Do I blame you? No, indeed.

15. Rhythm, quantity, and rhetorical figures are all to be considered in writing Latin.

USES OF NOUNS

16. We use nouns much more freely than the Romans did, and these are to be variously rendered in Latin.

When it is necessary to express an English noun by a Latin verb form, be careful to show the time of the noun by the tense of the verb:

1. The news came yesterday (it was announced yesterday), **herī nūntiātum est.**

2. No provision will be made (it will not have been provided), **nōn prōvīsum erit.**

3. They used to have confidence in us (they trusted us), **cōnfīdēbant nōbīs.**

4. Environment has a great deal to do with character (it is of great importance with whom you have lived), **magnī rēfert quibuscum vīxerīs.**

5. On his return, the general will raise more troops (the general, when he will have returned, will raise more troops), **imperātor, cum reversus erit, plūrēs cōpiās cōget.**

6. On his return the general raised more troops (the general, when he had returned, raised more troops), **imperātor, cum reversus ēsset, plūrēs cōpiās coēgit.**

17. One Latin noun may express an idea which in English would require two nouns with a preposition:

They have lost all sense of honor, **pudor eōs dēseruit.**

Again, we often find two Latin nouns with a conjunction, where in English there would be but one:

They formed an alliance, **societātem et foedus fēcērunt.**

18. Two Latin nouns connected by a copulative conjunction are used where we should expect one noun with an adjective or genitive:

Spectātor et testis, eye witness.
Vīs ac dolor, violent grief.
Ratiō et doctrīna, theoretical knowledge.
Ōrātiō et facultās, oratorical ability.
Omnia exempla cruciātūsque, all kinds of torture.
Summum perīculum et discrīmen, a very dangerous crisis.
Ūnō nūntiō atque ūnā sīgnificātiōne litterārum, by one stroke of the pen.

19. Names of persons may be used in the plural, frequently in a complimentary sense, to express character:

Nōn multī Cicerōnēs fuērunt, there have been few orators to be compared with Cicero.

Names of countries are used in the plural, as we use 'the Carolinas,' 'the Virginias':

Duās Hispāniās mūnīvit, he fortified the two Spains.

20. Abstract nouns are used in the plural to show different kinds or instances of abstract ideas, or to show one idea pertaining to several persons or things:

Caesarem mīlitis fortitūdinēs nōn fūgērunt, heroic acts on the part of a soldier did not escape Caesar's notice.

THE NOMINATIVE

21. The nominative is principally used:

1. As the subject of a finite verb:

Tempus fugit, time flies.

2. As a predicate noun.

Ariovistus rēx et amīcus ā senātū appellātus erat, Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the Senate.

3. As an appositive:

Flūmen Rhēnus Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dīvidit, the river Rhine separates the Helvetians from the Germans.

22. The nominative is used in titles, notices, and inscriptions:

Hannibal, Hamilcaris fīlius, Carthāginiēnsis, Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, the Carthaginian.

23. The nominative, either with or without an interjection, is sometimes used in exclamations:

Ō festus diēs, O happy day!
Ēn Priamus, behold Priam!

24. A nominative is used with an infinitive when the writer, "under influence of vivid description, ignores tense and person, and uses the so-called historical infinitive":

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre. . . . Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī, Caesar meanwhile dunning the Haedui for grain. . . . The Haedui putting him off from day to day.

THE GENITIVE

25. The genitive, the adjective case, is used chiefly with nouns, but it may be used with adjectives and verbs also:

Magister equitum, master of horse.

Avidī laudis, desirous of praise.

Sapientiae est id facere, doing that shows wisdom.

26. The genitive may be used with a noun to show the subject of the action implied in the limited noun:

Cicerōnis amor Tulliae fīliae, the love that Cicero feels for Tullia, his daughter.

In this sentence, **Cicerōnis** is a subjective genitive.

27. The genitive may be used with a noun to show the object of the action implied in the limited noun:

Cicerōnis amor Tulliae fīliae, the love that Tullia feels for Cicero.

Here, **Cicerōnis** is an objective, **Tulliae,** a subjective genitive.

28. The possessive pronouns **meus, tuus, suus, noster,** and **vester** are, as a rule, used where we should expect a subjective genitive of the corresponding personal pronoun:

Meus amīcus vēnit, I feel friendly to him who has come.

Numquam enim hīc neque suō neque amīcōrum iūdiciō revincētur, never will he be convicted either by his own evidence or that of his friends.

29. A genitive is used before **causā,** *on account of,* and **grātiā,** *for the sake of:*

Ipsīus causā, on his own account.
Exemplī grātiā (e.g.), for the sake of example.
Cōnsulis honōris causā, out of respect to the consul.

30. Remember to use with **causā** the possessives **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā,** and **vestrā,** not the genitives of the personal pronouns:

Mātris, nōn tuā, causā, for your mother's sake, not your own.

31. Do not forget that a genitive of description requires an adjective in agreement with it, and that under this genitive are included genitives of time, space, and number:

Dux magnae auctōritātis est, he is a leader of great influence.
Trium mēnsium molita cibāria efferunt, they take three months' provisions with them.
Quīnque diērum iter, a five days' march.
Mīlium passuum octō iter, a march of eight miles.
Mīlium mīlitum octō exercitus, an army of eight thousand soldiers.

32. With a word denoting a part, a genitive of the whole may be used. A genitive of this kind is

1. A noun in the plural, or a collective noun:

Quod nāvium habēbant, what (of) ships they had.
Pars equitātūs, a part of the cavalry.

2. A noun in the singular, in which case the word denoting the part is a nominative, or accusative singular neuter:

Id temporis, at that (of) time.
Nihil dētrīmentī, no loss.

33. A predicate genitive may be used with **sum**:

Populī est, he is on the people's side. (He is of the people.)

Fortitūdinis est id facere, it takes courage to do that.

Est sapientiae, or **sapientis**, it is a wise measure, it shows wisdom.

Multārum rērum est, it consists of many things.

34. Such verbs as **sum**, **aestimō**, *I value*, **putō**, *I think*, **faciō**, *I make*, **emō**, *I buy*, **vēndō**, *I sell*, are used with the genitives **magnī**, **parvī**, **floccī**, **huius**, **tantī**, and similar words, to express indefinite value:

Magnī tuam amīcitiam aestimant, they value your friendship highly.

Huius illud nōn facit, he does not care a snap of his finger for that.

Tantī tua apud eōs grātia est ut eant, your influence with them is so great that they will go.

Parvī rem putant, they think that it does not amount to much.

Quid dīcant floccī nōn facit, he does not care a straw for what they say. (He does not make it of the value of a piece of wool.)

35. In such expressions as 'accuse him of,' 'acquit him of,' 'charge him with,' 'condemn him for,' a crime, — the crime may be expressed by the genitive:

Prōditiōnis Catilīnam accūsāvērunt, they accused Catiline of treason.

36. Both genitive and accusative are used with verbs of remembering and forgetting:

Caesaris meminit, he remembers Caesar.

Reminīscī prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum, to remember the former valor of the Helvetians.

Haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit, to remember these things will at some time give us pleasure.

Numquam suī oblītus est, never did he forget self.

Iniūriās oblīviscī solēs, you usually forget wrongs.

37. Use with **miseret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, and **taedet**, the genitive of the person or thing that causes the feeling, with the accusative of the person affected:

Tuī mē miseret, I pity you.

Mē piget stultitiae meae, I am annoyed by my folly.

Mē pudet stultitiae meae, I am ashamed of my folly.

Mē factī paenitet, I am sorry for what I have done.

Tē vītae taedetne? are you tired of life?

Remember that an infinitive or a neuter pronoun may sometimes take the place of the genitive that causes the feeling:

Numquam paenitēbit tē īsse, never will you feel sorry for having gone.

Mē quid pudeat? why should I be ashamed?

38. With the impersonal verbs **rēfert** and **interest**, use the genitive of the person interested. The possessives **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, **nostrā**, and **vestrā**, are used, however, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns:

Meā, nōn frātris, interest magnī, to me, but not to my brother, is it of great importance.

39. The locative form of singular names of towns of the first or second declension is like the genitive:

Cicerō Arpīnī nātus erat, Cicero was born at Arpīnum.

If you wish to locate Arpīnum, the Latin will become:

Cicerō Arpīnī parvō in oppidō Latī nātus erat, Cicero was born at Arpīnum, a little town in Latium (*in* may be omitted).

40. The genitive of the gerund and gerundive is used very commonly with ***causā***, to express purpose.

When the gerundive is used with **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**, gender and number are not to be considered:

Suī cōnservandī causā, for the sake of saving themselves, for self-preservation.

Vestrī adhortandī causā, for the purpose of encouraging you.

Exercise 1

In the exercises which are to be written in Latin, the references are to the articles here given.

1. The Romans worshiped a great number of gods and goddesses.

2. The six great gods were Jupiter, Mars, Apollo, Neptune, Mercury, and Vulcan; the six great goddesses, Juno, Minerva, Venus, Diana, Ceres, and Vesta.

3. The father of gods and king of men was Jupiter.

4. The queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter was Juno.

5. Mars was the god of war; Apollo, of the sun; Neptune, of the sea; Vulcan, of fire. Mercury was Jupiter's messenger.

6. Minerva was the goddess of wisdom; Diana, of the moon; Venus, of love and beauty; Ceres, of grain and harvests; Vesta, of the hearth.

7. The Greeks represented their gods (as) statues of men and women.

8. These statues were very beautiful, and for this reason the Greeks were never ashamed of them. (37.)

9. The Athenians worshiped Minerva; they never forgot her, and she never forgot them. (36.)

10. Often did she accuse others of wrongdoing, but for them she always felt pity. (35; 37.)

11. No one remembers the heroes. (36.)
12. They were not gods, but a race stronger than men.

Exercise 2

1. There was a famous temple of Jupiter at Olympia. (39.)
2. There was a statue also of Jupiter at Olympia, a sacred place in Elis. (39.)
3. The inhabitants of eighteen towns used to go there yearly in honor of Jupiter, to carry what offerings they had. (29; 32.)
4. The towns Elis and Pisa wished to be leaders of affairs. (21, 3; 27.)
5. Sparta took the side of Elis. (33.)
6. This she did, not for the sake of Elis, but for her own sake. (29; 30.)
7. At this time Sparta was a city of great influence. (32, 2; 31.)
8. It was the capital of Laconia, and the chief city of the Peloponnesus.
9. It was situated on the right bank of the Eurotas.
10. Games were celebrated at Olympia in honor of Jupiter. (39; 29.)
11. The Greeks considered these games of very great importance. (34.)
12. The victor valued his crown highly. (34.)
13. Among the Romans, the worship of the gods consisted chiefly in prayers, vows, and sacrifices. (33.)
14. The words of a prayer were considered of the greatest importance. (34.)
15. He who made a vow was called a defendant of his vow. (21, 2.)

Exercise 3

1. After the death of Aristides the leader of one party in Athens was Cimon, a son of Miltiades.

2. He was a man of great influence, and, at first, all valued his opinion highly. (31; 34.)

3. Remembering the recent war, he thought it a wise measure for the Athenians to unite with the Spartans for the purpose of defending themselves against the Persians. (36; 33; 40.)

4. Pericles, the leader of the other party, did not favor this plan, for the Spartans usually did more for Sparta's sake than for that of Greece. (29.)

5. Never did they forget themselves and their own interests. (36.)

6. On the side of Cimon were the nobles; on that of Pericles, the people. (33.)

7. Since the Athenians thought that it was of great importance to themselves and to Attica, they formed an alliance with the Argives, enemies of the Spartans. (38; 17.)

8. When Cimon was accused of treason and exiled, very few pitied him. (35; 37.)

9. He did not forget his father, who also had been exiled. (36.)

Suggestions

In sentence 3, observe that the word *remembering* shows Cimon's reason for thinking it wise, etc. Express this thought by using **cum** with the subjunctive of the defective verb **meminī** (see Grammar), or the verb **teneō**, with which verb the noun **memoriā** must be used.

Do not let the word *for* in sentence 3 mislead you, but remember to use the infinitive with subject accusative after the verb of thinking. Observe the same construction in 7.

THE DATIVE

41. Both an indirect object in the dative and a direct object in the accusative are used with transitive verbs·

Rēx eī urbem dōnāvit, the king gave him a city.

42. While many verbs meaning to benefit, injure, favor, help, please, trust, persuade, pardon, command, obey, and the like, are used with an object in the dative, one should not rely upon the English meaning for the construction to be used. This must be learned from observation.

The dative **tibi** in the sentence **Tibi nōn nocent**, *they are not harming you*, shows that **nocent** is intransitive.

The accusative **tē** in the sentence **Tē non laedunt**, *they are not harming you*, shows that **laedunt** is transitive.

43. A verb which takes an object in the dative is used impersonally in the passive voice and retains its dative:

Active. **Tibi nocent**, they harm you.
Passive. **Tibi nocētur**, you are being harmed.

44. Some verbs may be used with either a dative or an accusative, but to express a different idea:

Servī dominīs metuēbant, the slaves feared for their masters.
Servī dominōs metuēbant, slaves feared their masters.
Tē cōnsulunt, they ask your advice.
Tibi cōnsulunt, they consult your interest.
Glōriam cupit, he is eager for glory.
Cupit Helvētiīs, he is devoted to the Helvetians.

45. Possession may be shown by both the genitive and the dative:

Puerī liber est, it is the boy's book. (He is the owner of the book.)

Puerō liber est, the boy has a book. (The possession may be but temporary.)

In this connection, learn the following:

I have,	**mihi est,** or	**habeō.**
You have,	**tibi est,** or	**habēs.**
He has,	**eī est,** or	**habet.**
We have,	**nōbīs est,** or	**habēmus.**
You have,	**vōbīs est,** or	**habētis.**
They have,	**eīs est,** or	**habent.**

46. If the possessor is first or second person, permanent ownership may be shown by a possessive pronoun agreeing in gender, number, and case with the object possessed:

Nostra domus in summō colle posita est, our house is on the top of a hill.

47. There are many adjectives with which a dative may be used:

Deō similis, like a god.

Castrīs idōneus locus, a place suitable for a camp.

Nōbīs amīcus, friendly to us.

Proximī Germānīs, next to the Germans.

Mīlitibus iūcundum, pleasant for soldiers.

Graeciae ūtile, useful for Greece.

Eīs benīgnus, kind to them.

48. Observe that, with some adjectives, the *object for which* may be expressed by the *accusative with* **ad**:

Ad multās rēs ūtile est, it is useful for many things.

Also, that the *object toward which* may be expressed by the *accusative with* **in**:

In eōs crūdēlis erat, he was cruel to them.

49. Remember that with the verb **esse**, and frequently with verbs of motion, there may be two datives, one denoting what a thing tends to be, or is meant to be, the other showing the person interested. The dative of tendency or purpose is singular and is usually an abstract noun. Examples of this dative are **auxiliō, bonō, contemptuī, cūrae, dētrīmentō, impedīmentō, odiō, onerī, ōrnāmentō, praesidiō, salūtī, subsidiō, ūsuī:**

Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, the Haedui had sent cavalry for the purpose of aiding Caesar.

Cuī bonō est? Who is the gainer? To whom is it a benefit?

Hominibus Gallīs brevitās nostra contemptuī est, our short stature is an object of contempt to the Gauls.

Haec sibi sunt cūrae, these things are his business.

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, the friendship of the Roman people ought to be an honor and a protection to him, not a detriment.

Gallīs magnō erat impedīmentō, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.

Odiō sum Rōmānīs, I am an object of hatred to the Romans.

Multīs onerī vīta erat, to many was life a burden.

Eīs salūtī erat, it proved a means of safety to them.

Eōs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit, he sends them as a relief to the townspeople.

Magnō nōbīs ūsuī erant, they were of great use to us.

50. The use of the dative of the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation and the compound tenses of the passive voice may be best understood from examples, which it would be well to learn:

1. I must rise,	**mihi surgendum est.**
You must rise,	**tibi surgendum est.**
He must rise,	**eī surgendum est.**
We must rise,	**nōbīs surgendum est.**
You must rise,	**vōbīs surgendum est.**
They must rise,	**eīs surgendum est.**

It will be seen from the above that the English personal subject is expressed in Latin by the dative of the agent, and the *intransitive* English verb is rendered in Latin by the *impersonal* form of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

2. I must send the money,	**mihi pecūnia mittenda est.**
You must send the money,	**tibi pecūnia mittenda est.**
He must send the money,	**eī pecūnia mittenda est.**
We must send the money,	**nōbīs pecūnia mittenda est.**
You must send the money,	**vōbīs pecūnia mittenda est.**
They must send the money,	**eīs pecūnia mittenda est.**

Here also it will be observed that the English personal subject is expressed in Latin by the dative of the agent.

The *transitive* English verb, however, is rendered in Latin by the *personal* form of the passive periphrastic conjugation, and the English *object*, by the Latin *subject*.

3. I must obey the law,	**mihi lēgī pārendum est.**
You must obey the law,	**tibi lēgī pārendum est.**
He must obey the law,	**eī lēgī pārendum est.**
We must obey the law,	**nōbīs lēgī pārendum est.**
You must obey the law,	**vōbīs lēgī pārendum est.**
They must obey the law,	**eīs lēgī pārendum est.**

Again is the English personal subject expressed in Latin by the dative of the agent.

The *transitive* English verb, however, is rendered in Latin by an intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive with the dative of the object (43).

4. I must obey the tribune,	**ā mē tribūnō pārendum est.**
You must obey the tribune,	**abs tē tribūnō pārendum est.**
He must obey the tribune,	**ab eō tribūnō pārendum est.**
We must obey the tribune,	**ā nōbīs tribūnō pārendum est.**
You must obey the tribune,	**ā vōbīs tribūnō pārendum est.**
They must obey the tribune,	**ab eīs tribūnō pārendum est.**

In sentences of the above type, for the purpose of avoiding ambiguity, express the English personal subject by the ablative of the agent, which ablative requires the preposition **ā** or **ab**.

5. I have provided, **mihi prōvīsum est.**

Here the English personal subject may be rendered in Latin by the dative of the agent used with a compound tense of the passive voice.

51. A dative may be used with a noun derived from a verb that governs the dative:

Obtemperātiō lēgibus, obedience to laws.

Exercise 4

1. By the laws of the twelve tables, Roman debtors were given up to their creditors, to be bound with fetters and cords.

2. For this reason they were called Nexi, Obaerati, or Addicti.

3. When a Roman was in debt and could not obtain security within sixty days, his effects were given to his creditors.

4. At this time, the houses of the nobles were useful for many things. (32; 48.)

5. They had prisons attached to them, and these were, at times, full of plebeian debtors.

6. Life was a great burden to a debtor. (49.)

7. Tribunes were created to protect the plebeians, to whom the nobles had been cruel. (49; 48.)

8. No longer did the plebeians fear for themselves, because the tribunes were now kind to them.

9. Whoever did not obey the veto of a tribune, was immediately ordered to be led to prison by a 'viator.'

10. One by whom a tribune was harmed in word or deed was held accursed, and his goods were sold by the state. (50, 4.)

11. Toward such a person the law was very severe. (48.)

12. It was lawful for the tribunes to bring any one into a 'contio' and compel him to reply to their questions.

Exercise 5

1. In early times the Athenians had no written laws. (45.)

2. The nobles announced the laws to the people.

3. The former never consulted the latter, but usually worked for their own interests. (44.)

4. The latter feared the nobles, and at the same time feared for their friends. (44.)

5. Written laws are always a great safeguard to a people. (49.)

6. Obedience to written laws in Athens dates from Draco's time. (51.)

7. Of all the Athenians who were cruel to the people, Draco was the most cruel. (48.)

8. At times he was severe toward the nobles also.

9. Solon, on the other hand, was greatly trusted, not only by the nobles, but also by the people. (50, 4.)

10. His measures were a great benefit to farmers. (49.)

11. These were all freed from debt.

12. Those who had had houses in the country moved back into them. (45.)

13. The nobles now had to consult the interests of the people. (44; 50, 4.)

14. Citizens protected the state, because there was no army (to do so). (49.)

15. Solon pardoned many who had almost ruined the state. (42.)

Exercise 6

1. Tribunes were so called because they were at first created from the tribunes of the soldiers.

2. A tribune had to remain in the city night and day, so that he might always be ready to help those in trouble. (50, 1; 49.)

3. Everybody had to rise in the presence of the tribunes. (50, 1.)

4. Both magistrates and private citizens had to obey the veto of the tribune. (50, 3.)

5. Even magistrates had to obey the tribunes. (50, 4.)

6. A plebeian had to consult a tribune. (50, 2.)

7. A tribune had to consult the interests of a plebeian. (50, 4.)

THE ACCUSATIVE

52. Such words as **diem, diēs, noctem, noctēs, annum, annōs, aestātem,** and **hiemem** answer the question, 'How long?' They may be used either with or without a preposition.

Lūdī per decem diēs factī sunt, games were celebrated for ten days.

Dum paucōs diēs morātur, while he was delaying a few days.

Trīgintā annōs nātus est, he is thirty years old.

53. **Mīlia passuum, multōs pedēs,** and similar expressions show extent of space. These may be used without a preposition or with **per,** and again, with such adjectives as **longus, lātus, altus:**

Multa mīlia passuum prōcessērunt, they advanced many miles.

Mīlitēs aggerem altum multōs pedēs exstrūxērunt, the soldiers raised a mound many feet high.

54. **Iūsiūrandum, somnium, victōriam,** and other nouns whose meaning is suggested by the verbs with which they are used are called cognate (*born together*) accusatives:

Iūsiūrandum iūrāvit, he took an oath.
Mīrum somnium somniāvī, I dreamed a strange dream.
Victōriam vīcit, he gained a victory.
Bonam vītam vīxit, he led a good life.

55. Keep in mind such accusatives as answer the question, 'In what respect?' Among these are found: **multum, plūs, plūrimum, minimum, tantum, quantum, aliquid, nihil, reliqua, cētera, id, quid, quod.**

56. While **cēlāre,** *to conceal,* and **docēre,** *to teach,* and some verbs of asking and demanding may take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, remember that

"This then is not the only way;
For it is also right to say
Docēre and **cēlāre dē**;
Poscō, *I claim,* and **flāgitō,**
And also **petō, postulō,**
Take **aliquid ab aliquō,**
While **quaerō** takes **ex, ab, dē, quō.**"

Nihil tē cēlō, there is nothing that I conceal from you.

Illum litterās docuistī, you taught him his A B C's.

Caesarem sententiam rogāvit, he asked Caesar his opinion.

In changing a sentence of this kind to the passive voice the accusative of the person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing remains unchanged:

Caesar sententiam rogātus est, Caesar was asked his opinion.

Learn the constructions used with **quaerō**.

Quaerit ex sōlō ea, he makes these inquiries of him alone.

Eadem ab aliīs quaerit, he makes the same inquiries of others.

Quaerēbant dē mē ubi essēs, they asked me where you were.

57. Avoid ambiguity in the use of **ab** with **quaeritur, petitur, poscitur, postulātur**, etc.

Aliquid ab aliquō postulātur, something is demanded *of* somebody or *by* somebody.

By changing the verb to the active voice the thought may be expressed:

Aliquid ab aliquō postulat, he demands something of somebody.

Aliquis aliquid postulat, somebody demands something.

58. Observe the following:

1. **Rōmam vēnērunt**, they came to Rome. (**Rōmam** without a preposition, the name of a city denoting the place to which, used with a verb of motion.)

2. **In urbem Rōmam vēnērunt**, they came to the city, Rome. (**In urbem** precedes **Rōmam**.)

3. **Rōmam in urbem pulcherrimam vēnērunt**, they came to Rome, a very beautiful city. (**In urbem** with an adjective modifier follows **Rōmam**.)

4. **Ortygiam vēnērunt**, they came to Ortygia (Delos). (**Ortygiam**, the name of a small island, hence it takes the same construction as the name of a city.)

5. **In Ītaliam vēnērunt**, they came to Italy. (**Ītaliam**, the name of a country, requires a preposition.)

6. **In Siciliam vēnērunt**, they came to Sicily. (**Siciliam**, the name of a large island, follows the construction of names of countries.)

7. **Domum vēnērunt**, they came home. **Rūs vēnērunt**, they came to the country. (**Domum** and **rūs** follow the construction of names of cities.)

8. **Domum tuam**
In domum tuam } **vēnērunt**, they came to your house.

(With a possessive pronoun as a modifier, **domum** may be used either with or without a preposition.)

9. **In domum meliōrem vēnērunt**, they came to a better house. (With an adjective modifier, **domum**, as a rule, requires a preposition.)

59. Do not forget that many verbs which in English are intransitive are to be rendered in Latin by transitive verbs:

Absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem horrēbant, they used to shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus even when he was away from them.

Honōrēs dēspērant, they despair of office.

Illum nātantem rīsēre, they laughed at him trying to swim.

60. One meets the following and similar expressions so often that it would be well to learn them:

1. **Paulō ante**, a little while ago, a little while before.
2. **Paulō post**, a little while after.

3. **Multīs ante annīs**, many years before.

4. **Ante multōs annōs**, many years before.

5. **Abhinc multōs annōs**, many years ago.

6. **Abhinc multīs annīs**, many years before.

7. **Post multōs annōs**, many years after.

8. **Multīs post annīs**, many years after.

9. **Paulō post Gallōs victōs**, a short time after his conquest of the Gauls.

10. **Multīs annīs postquam Gallōs vīcit**, many years after his conquest of the Gauls.

61. Many verbs of making, calling, choosing, naming, and the like take two accusatives, denoting the same person or thing:

Cicerōnem cōnsulem fēcērunt, they made Cicero consul.

Remember that in the passive both of these accusatives become nominatives:

Cicerō cōnsul factus est, Cicero was made consul.

Exercise 7

1. A Roman camp was divided into two parts.

2. There was a space two hundred feet wide between the ramparts and the tents. (53.)

3. A Roman soldier carried a load that seemed almost incredible.

4. This load consisted of provisions for fifteen days, and utensils of different kinds. (31; 33.)

5. He usually carried corn because it was not heavy.

6. His arms were not a burden to him. (49.)

7. With this load he usually marched twenty miles a day. (52; 53.)

8. There were beasts of burden to carry the tents and the baggage of the army.

9. In early times the Romans very seldom used wagons, because they were heavy and the roads were narrow and difficult.

10. When the Romans had gained a victory, they saluted their leader as Imperator. (54; 61.)

11. By this name he was known until he returned home. (58.)

12. A little while after a victory, the Imperator sent to Rome to the senate letters encircled with laurel to inform the Romans of his victory. (60; 58.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. If the work of dividing the camp was going on, use the imperfect tense; if completed, express the word *divided* by the perfect participle used adjectively, with the imperfect tense of **sum**.

5. *He usually carried* shows that he was accustomed to carry.

8. *The beasts of burden were for the purpose of carrying the tents.* (40.)

10. *As Imperator:* do not try to express in Latin the word *as*, until you have decided the exact thought to be conveyed.

12. *The general sent letters by which he might inform the Romans of* (dē) *his victory*, or *announce it to them.*

62. Some of the uses of the word *as* may be best understood from examples:

1. **Cincinnātō, cum esset dictātor, manendum erat in urbe,** as Cincinnatus was dictator, he had to remain in the city. (50, 1.)

2. **Illī, cum essent cīvēs, erant praesidiō Rōmae,** as citizens they protected Rome.

In both of these sentences the word *as* suggests a reason, which is shown by the use of **cum,** a conjunction introducing a causal clause.

3. **Caesar cōnsul multīs īgnōvit,** Caesar as consul pardoned many (during the time that he was consul).

4. **Caesar, ut ante dictum est, erat in Galliā.** As was before said, Caesar was in Gaul. (Notice **ut** with the indicative in this sentence.)

5. **Ut sementem fēceris, ita metēs,** as one sows, so shall he reap. (As you will have made your sowing, so you will reap.)

Comparison is here shown by the use of the correlative adverbs **ut** and **ita.**

6. **Ille idem, quod tū, putat,** he thinks the same as you do. (He thinks the same thing as you think.)

In this sentence, *as* is a relative pronoun.

7. **Prō amīcīs eōs habēbimus,** we shall look upon them as friends. (We shall have them for friends.)

8. **Spērō deōs illīs ac merentur relātūrōs esse grātiam,** I hope that the gods will requite them as they deserve.

9. **Ad cīvitātem adscrīptus est,** he was enrolled as a citizen. (He was enrolled according to a state, or for a state.)

10. **Virtūs sōla neque datur dōnō neque accipitur,** virtue is the only thing that cannot be given or taken as a gift. (Virtue alone is neither given nor received for a gift.)

11. **Tē quī moneās dēlēgimus,** we have chosen you as our adviser. (We have chosen you who may advise us.)

12. **Erant tot sententiae quot hominēs**, there were just as many opinions as there were individuals. (**Tot — quot**, are correlative adjectives.)

Exercise 8

1. Cicero was forty years old when the Romans made him praetor. (52; 61.)
2. At that time there were eight praetors or judges. (32.)
3. These were elected for one year. (52.)
4. Twelve years before, Cicero had made a trip to Athens, the chief city of Greece. (60; 58.)
5. He had gone to Asia also. (58.)
6. He was away from home for two years, during which he traveled many miles. (52; 53.)
7. When he was thirty years old he returned to Rome. (52; 58.)
8. Five years after his consulship he was exiled. (60.)
9. While he was in exile the people burned his house.
10. He applied to many for aid, so that he might build another house. (56.)
11. These were quite willing to give him much advice. (55.)
12. Of course he began to despair of aid. (59.)
13. His friend Atticus returned home at this time. (58; 32.)
14. Atticus usually asked Cicero many questions about his affairs. (56.)
15. Cicero concealed nothing from him. (56.)
16. He soon built a new house, something like his old one. (55.)
17. Not long after he moved into his new house. (60; 58.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. The thought may be expressed by using one sentence instead of a main clause with another dependent upon it: *Cicero, forty years old, the Romans made praetor.*

2. Render the word *or* by **vel**, as this word suggests here a choice of the words *praetors* and *judges*.

7. Express by one sentence.

10. *He applied to many for aid = he asked many for aid.*

11. *To give him much advice* may be expressed by the verb **monēre** with an accusative of specification.

16. *Something like his old one = similar to his old house in some respect.*

THE ABLATIVE

63. The Ablative, the adverbial case, is used principally with verbs and adjectives.

64. The prepositions usually found with the ablative of separation are **ab, dē, ex**; but this ablative may be used without a preposition:

Sēcernant sē ā bonīs, let them separate themselves from the good.

Ab eōrum oculīs concēdistī, you went away from their sight.

Ego vix abs tē eōrum manūs contineō, with difficulty do I keep their hands from you.

Extorta est ista sīca dē manibus, that dagger of yours was wrested from your hands.

Ē cīvitāte pulsus est, he was banished from the state.

65. Do not use a preposition with the name of a town or small island to express the 'place from which' after a verb of motion:

1. **Carthāgine profectus est,** he started from Carthage.

2. **Carthāgine ex urbe Āfricae profectus est,** he started from Carthage, a city of Africa.

(Notice the preposition and also the order of the words in 2.)

66. The perfect participles **nātus, genitus, ortus,** and **satus,** denoting birth or origin, are used with the ablative of source.

The preposition **ex** is used with pronouns; **ab,** sometimes **ex,** with remote ancestors:

Ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es, you are his son and mine.

Ab Germānīs ortī sunt, they are descended from the Germans.

67. After a comparative the ablative may take the place of **quam** (*than*) with a nominative or accusative:

Cicerō Hortēnsiō ēloquentior erat, Cicero was more eloquent than Hortensius.

68. Remember that the ablative of means is used without a preposition; the ablative of the agent, with **ā** or **ab**:

Litterīs certior fiēbat, he was informed by letter.

Labiēnus ā Caesare certior fiēbat, Labienus was informed by Caesar.

69. From such expressions as **quā rē, quā dē causā, quā ex parte, hōc,** meaning *for this reason*, we see that *cause* may be expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition.

70. Where in English we use an adverb to answer the question 'How?' an ablative with or without **cum** may be used in Latin:

Magnā cum lēnitāte fluit, it flows very smoothly.

71. Remember that the degree of difference may be shown by the ablative:

Hoc quam illud multō melius est, this is much better than that.

72. Observe that the following sentences with different constructions express the same thought:

1. **Fōrmā pulcherrima sunt,** they are very beautiful in form (**fōrmā,** ablative of specification).

2. **Fōrmā pulcherrimā sunt,** they are of very beautiful form (**fōrmā,** ablative of description).

73. If you wish to express the cost or the selling price of anything by a noun, use the ablative:

Aurō patriam vēndidit, he sold his country for gold.

74. The lack of a perfect participle in the active voice in Latin, and our frequent use of an English participle whose form only is present make it necessary to use the ablative absolute freely.

Do not forget, however, that the noun or pronoun in this construction, as a rule, shows a different person or thing from the subject or object of the main clause.

Caesar, Ariovistō victō, in hīberna exercitum dēdūxit, having conquered Ariovistus, Caesar led his army down into winter quarters.

75. As a rule, use the preposition **in** with the ablative to answer the question 'Where?'

If, however, this ablative is used with **tōtus, omnis, cūnctus,** or **medius,** the preposition is often omitted.

In Galliā nunc multī Germānī erant, there were now in Gaul many Germans.

Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur, everywhere in the whole camp wills were being signed and sealed.

76. The following forms are to be learned:

On the right,	**dextrā.**
On the left,	**sinistrā.**
On the ground,	**humī.**
On land and sea,	**terrā marīque.**
At home and in the field,	**domī mīlitiaeque.**
In the country,	**rūrī.**
From the country,	**rūre.**
To the country,	**rūs.**
At home,	**domī.**
From home,	**domō.**
In the middle of the city,	**mediā in urbe.**
On the top of the mountain,	**in summō monte.**

77. If the 'place where' is the name of a town or small island in the plural, or of the third declension, use the locative, which is like the dative or ablative in form: (39.)

Athēnīs multōs annōs erant, they spent many years in Athens.

Athēnīs in urbe pulcherrimā multōs annōs erant, they spent many years in Athens, a beautiful city (**in** may be omitted).

78. Such words as **diē**, *on the day*, **vēre**, *in spring*, **aestāte**, *in summer*, **auctumnō**, *in autumn*, **hieme**, *in winter*, answer the question 'When?'

Eōdem diē castra mōvit, on the same day he broke up camp.

Bellum Pompēius extrēmā hieme apparāvit, ineunte vēre suscēpit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcit, Pompey prepared for war late in the winter, began it early in the spring, finished it in midsummer.

79. Remember that, as a rule, the deponent verbs **ūtor**, *use*, **fruor**, *enjoy* (in the sense of getting profit from), **fungor**,

discharge (in the sense of performing a duty), **potior**, *get possession of*, and **vēscor**, *live on, feed on*, take the ablative.

(**Potior** may take the genitive, and it is regularly so used with **rērum : potīrī rērum**, *to get the power.*)

Exercise 9

1. The Capitol, built by Tarquinius Superbus, was situated on the Capitoline hill. (68; 75.)

2. In the middle of the Capitol was a temple of Jupiter. (76.)

3. On the right was a temple of Minerva. (For this reason, she is said to have obtained honors next to Jupiter.) On the left was a temple of Juno. (76.)

4. The Capitol was one hundred steps higher than the Forum, and it was the most strongly fortified part of the city; for this reason it was called the 'Arx.' (71; 67; 69.)

5. The Capitol cost an immense sum of money and was rich in gifts. (73; 72.)

6. The gates were of heavy bronze and of extraordinary workmanship. (72.)

7. They were great both in size and workmanship. (72.)

8. As in Rome, so in Athens, Corinth, Carthage, and in other large cities, the principal temple, or the citadel, was called by the name Capitol. (62, 5.)

9. The temples were all filled with sacred offerings.

10. Everything that money could buy was found here.

SUGGESTIONS

3. *To have obtained honors = to have occupied a position of honor* (**occupāvisse honōrēs**).

5. *Cost an immense sum of money:* **stāre summā pecūniā.**

6. Observe that *of heavy bronze and of extraordinary workmanship* describe the gates; in sentence 7, *in size* and *in workmanship* tell in what respect the gates were great.

8. In Rome (39), in Athens (77), in Corinth (39), in Carthage (77), in cities (75).

10. *Everything that money could buy = all things that could be bought with money.*

Exercise 10

1. In early times columns were erected in a city in honor of great men. (78; 75; 29.)

2. There were many kinds of columns.

3. In the erection of these, the Romans used both bronze and marble. (79.)

4. The marble they sometimes brought from Marmarium, a town in Euboea. (65.)

5. By the Romans there were erected many columns, no one of which was more remarkable than Trajan's column. (68; 67.)

6. On this there are cut Trajan's exploits in Dacia.

7. Trajan was not born in Italy. (75.)

8. He came to Italy from Italica, a town of Spain. (58; 65.)

9. Although he was Nerva's successor, he was not his son.

10. The ornaments of the column of Antoninus and (that) of Trajan are of the same kind. (72.)

11. The former column is much higher than the latter, but it is inferior in workmanship. (71; 72.)

12. In the whole of Europe, no nation was more fond of adorning its buildings with pillars than were the Romans. (75.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. *Columns were of many and various kinds.* (72.)

3. *In the erection of these:* **in hīs columnīs con-locandīs.** The gerundive is used to show that the work of erecting was going on, not completed.

4. *A town in Euboea = a town of Euboea.*

6. To show by means of a column what Trajan had done in Dacia, it would be necessary to cut into the column. A Roman would show this in his description: *Into this column are cut the things done* (**gerō**) *by Trajan when he was in Dacia.* Observe that the verb *are cut* shows an act that is completed. Use, therefore, the perfect, not the present tense.

9. *He was not the son* (**nātus**) *of Nerva* (66), *whom* (dative) *he succeeded.*

Exercise 11

1. For four days after Leonidas reached the pass of Thermopylae the Persians remained in camp. (52.)

2. On the fifth day Xerxes ordered an assault. (78.)

3. During the whole of that day and also the next day the battle raged fiercely. (52.)

4. The Persians were unable to drive the Greeks back.

5. Great was the slaughter of the Persians.

6. A few of the Spartans were lost, it is true, but about the rest, nothing is said.

7. After the fighting began, a treacherous Greek, Ephialtes by name, told Xerxes of the path over the mountain. (60; 72.)

8. On this account, the Persians were enabled to make an attack upon the Greeks from the rear, and they therefore won the victory. (69; 54.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. For the declension of **Leōnidās**, see H. 81 (50); LM 445; A 37; G 65; B 22. *To reach the pass* is to come through to (**ad**) the pass.

2. *Xerxes* (H 110 (68); LM 511; A 63; G 65; B 47) *commanded that an attack should be made on the Greeks* (**in Graecōs**).

3. Express *the battle raged* by the passive voice of **pugnāre**, using the impersonal form, that is, the third person singular number.

5. If the slaughter of the Persians was great, the Greeks killed a great multitude of Persians.

6. *Nothing is said = nothing has been said or written.*

7. In this sentence we find the English noun in *-ing* used as a subject. This is not to be so rendered in Latin. The thought may be expressed by using the verb **coepī** in the passive and as an impersonal verb, with the present infinite passive of **pugnāre**: **postquam pugnārī coeptum est.** (See Grammar for **coepī**, a defective verb.) — *Ephiāltēs* (*ae*): H 81 (50); LM 444; A 37; G 65; B 22. — *Told Xerxes = informed Xerxes* (**Xerxēn certiōrem fēcit**) *of* (**dē**) *the path over* (**per**) *the mountain.*

8. *The Persians were enabled to make an attack = the result of this was that the Persians were able* (imperfect subjunctive) *to make an attack.*

Exercise 12

1. At this time there was no one from whom the Greeks could get assistance. (32; 78.)

2. The laws of Sparta forbade a soldier to leave his post of duty.

3. Leonidas did not fear death.

4. A Spartan could stand all sorts of torture. (18.)

5. When hope seemed out of the question, Leonidas ordered the rest of the troops to withdraw.

6. He himself with three hundred Spartans and seven hundred Thespians remained.

7. These all took an oath to be faithful unto death. (54.)

8. Their heroic acts were not in vain.

9. At that time men were not unwilling to forsake the common cause for the sake of self-preservation. (40.)

10. Leonidas, king of Sparta, fell in the heroic defense of Thermopylae. (40.)

11. People would travel miles to get to Sparta, so that they might read for themselves, on the column erected in honor of the brave Spartans, the names of the famous three hundred. (53.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *No one sent troops to aid the Greeks.* (49.)

2. *To leave the post of duty = to withdraw from battle.*

5. *When hope seemed out of the question = hope having been taken away.* (74.)

6. Express the preposition **cum** with definite numbers.

8. *Not in vain did they fight very bravely.*

10. *Leonidas fighting very bravely for the purpose of defending Thermopylae fell.*

11. *They were accustomed to go many miles in order that they might reach Sparta.* (58.)

Exercise 13

1. Bias, Chilo, Cleobulus, Periander, Pittacus, Solon, and Thales were the seven men whom the ancient writers usually reckoned as the Seven Wise Men. (62.)

2. Periander was of noble birth, and he made up his mind to be king of Corinth, not only in name, but also in reality. (72.)

3. He built a palace on the top of the citadel of Corinth and surrounded himself with soldiers. (76.)

4. No one in the whole of Greece was more influential than Periander. (75; 67.)

5. Fearing that men might talk about liberty, he issued an order prohibiting public meetings.

6. In a fit of anger he killed his wife, although he was very fond of her.

7. Then, because his conscience troubled him, he ordered all of the women of Corinth to burn their handsome robes at her tomb, to show respect, as he said, to her memory. (29.)

8. At this time, his two sons were in the country with their grandfather. (76.)

9. The younger immediately suspected his father of his mother's murder.

10. On his return from the country, he would not salute the king, his father. (16; 76.)

11. For this reason, he was obliged to leave home. (69; 76.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. **Biās, Biantis; Chīlō, Chīlōnis; Cleobūlus, Cleobūlī; Periander, Periandrī; Pittacus** or **Pittacos, Pittacī; Solon** or **Solo, Solōnis.**

2. *Made up his mind to be king = decided to make himself king.*

3. *Surrounded himself with soldiers = had soldiers around him* (**circum sē**).

4. *To be more influential:* **plūs posse** or **plūs valēre.** (55.)

5. *That:* **nē**. — *Issued an order prohibiting = prohibited public meetings,* **ab hominibus convenīrī prohibuit.**

6. *Angry, he killed his wife.*

7. *On account of conscience:* **abiectus cōnscientiā.**

9. *The younger* (**minor nātū**) *thought that his mother had been killed by his father,* or, *to the younger, suspicion was not wanting that* (**quīn**) *his father had killed his mother.*

10. *He refused to salute.*

11. *He was driven from home.*

Exercise 14

1. The two sons had always differed from each other in looks, disposition, and ability. (72.)

2. In his old age, Periander began to realize that his elder son would not be a suitable successor.

3. He sent his daughter to try to persuade the younger one to return home. (42 ; 58.)

4. He refused to leave Corcyra to return to Corinth while his father was king. (58.)

5. A few years later, Periander was willing to abdicate the throne.

6. Eagerly did he wait for the coming of the son with whom he had not been happy, and without whom he was not contented.

7. The father had always had confidence in this son. (16.)

8. But when the people learned what had been done, there was a feeling of fear throughout the whole city. (17.)

9. Everybody felt that this was a dangerous crisis. (18.)

10. When the son had decided to return home, he was captured and afterwards killed. (58.)

11. Periander took vengeance upon his captors.

12. A few years later he died, after a reign of forty years. (60; 52.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *From each other*, **inter sē**.

2. *Periander, old, felt that his elder* (**maiōrem nātū**) *son would not be* (infinitive) *a suitable* (person) *to succeed him.*

See H 591, 7 (503, II, 2); LM 1819; A 320, *f*; G 631, 1; B 282, 3.

3. Express both the purpose for which Periander sent his daughter, and her purpose in persuading her brother. H 568 (497); LM 1947; A 317; G 545; B 282.

4. *He refused to leave:* H 568, 8; (p. 279, footnote 2;) LM 1960, 1977; A 319, *c*; G 423, 2, N. 2, 548, N. 1, 549, N. 1; B 295, 3.

Remember that Corcyra is the name of a *large* island; hence, use a preposition with it. — *While his father was king.* (74.)

8. *What had been done:* H 649, II (529); LM 1774, 1773; A 210, 2, 334; G 467; B 300.

11. This is not unlike the English expression *Periander made his captors pay for this* = *Periander from* (**dē**) *those who had captured his son took* (**sūmō, ere**) *the pay* (**supplicium**).

THE USES OF ADJECTIVES

80. The English adjectives *a, an, the,* when definite rather than indefinite are to be *expressed* in Latin, and usually by pronouns:

The Iliad, **Īlias illa.**

After a fashion, in a way, **quōdam modō.**

81. The Latin word **ūnus** translates the English *a*, *one*, *single*, etc., when these words express the numeral *one*:

No one ought to be punished twice for one offense, **nēmō dēbet bis pūnīrī prō ūnō dēlictō.**

82. If the English word *one* is used in an indefinite sense, show this by the use of **quīdam, quī**, etc.:

It was stated in one of your letters, **in tuā quādam epistolā scrīptum est.**

One who gives quickly gives twice, **bis dat quī cito dat.**

83. The English word *one* is used with so many meanings that these require many and varied forms of Latin expression. These may be best understood from examples:

1. One says one thing; another, another, **alius aliud dīcit.** (The double English statement is shown in Latin by two cases of **alius.**)

2. One is in Athens, another in Antioch, **alius Athēnīs, alius est Antiochīae.** (One . . . another, **alius . . . alius.**)

3. One is in Corinth, the other in Carthage, **alter Corinthī, alter est Carthāgine.** (*One* and *the other* suggest two. Use **alter . . . alter** if the reference is to the individual.)

4. One party withdrew, the other made an attack on the enemy, **alterī sē recēpērunt, alterī impetum fēcērunt in hostēs.**

84. In a series, as a rule, use **ūnus** to mean *first;* **alter**, *second:*

The first class, **ūnum genus.**
The second class, **alterum genus.**
The third class, **tertium genus.**

85. Remember that numerals include cardinals, ordinals, distributives, and numeral adverbs. H 161–172 (171–182); LM 2404; A 94–98; G 94–99; B 78–82.

86. Distributive adjectives are used to mean *so many apiece;* these, except **singulī** and **ternī**, may be used with nouns plural in form, but singular in meaning:

Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs praefēcit, Caesar appointed a lieutenant for each legion.

Ūna castra mūnīta sunt, one camp is fortified.

Trīna castra mūnīta sunt, three camps are fortified.

87. **Mīlle**, *thousand*, is used both as an adjective and as a noun. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a noun it is declined:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nom. and Acc.	**mīlle**		**mīlia**
Gen.	(wanting)		**mīlium**
Abl.	**mīlle (ī)**	Dat. and Abl.	**mīlibus**

Mīlle passūs, one mile (one thousand paces).

Mīlle passuum, one mile (one thousand of paces).

Duo mīlia passuum, two miles (two thousands of paces).

88. Latin comparatives may be variously rendered in English:

Longius iter, a *longer* march.

Plūrēs, *too* many.

Loquācior, *rather* talkative.

Prior loquitur, he is the *first* to speak.

Sapientior quam melior, wiser than *good*

Caelum pice nigrius, *black* as pitch.

89. A Latin comparative may be strengthened by **etiam**, *even*, **multō**, *much*, **paulō**, *a little*, and similar words:

Multō maior alacritās, a much greater eagerness.

90. Comparison may be shown by the use of correlative adjectives; also by such prepositions as **ante, prae, praeter:**

Tantum hoc illud quantum est, this is as large as that.

Ante aliōs pulcherrimus erat, he was more handsome than any of the others.

Fortis prae cēterīs erat, he was the bravest of all. (**Prae** with the ablative shows that he was the bravest when contrasted with the rest, who may not have been brave.)

Fortis prae cēterōs erat, he was the bravest of all; he was the bravest when compared with others who were brave.

Praeter cēterās gentes avidī laudis fuistis, you have been more eager for glory than the rest of nations have been.

91. **Magis,** *more,* occurs commonly with adjectives or adverbs; **plūs,** *more,* with verbs; **plūris** (the genitive of **plūs**) is seldom used except to express indefinite value:

Est magis idōneum, it is more suitable.

Magis audācter quam parātē pugnant, they show more boldness than preparation in their fighting.

Plūris domus quam solum est, the house is worth more than the ground.

92. Remember that **plūs** and **amplius,** *more,* and **minus,** *less,* may be used with numerals without having any effect on the construction:

Minus mīlia passuum tria ab eīs pōnit, he pitches his camp less than three miles from them.

93. **Per** prefixed to a positive gives it the force of a superlative:

Hoc est perfacile factū, this is very easy to do.

Perpaucī sē ēripuērunt, very few escaped.

94. **Quam, longē,** or **vel** may be used to emphasize a superlative:

Quam maximum numerum coēgit, he raised the largest possible number.

Apud Helvētiōs longē dītissimus fuit, among the Helvetians he was by far the richest.

Vel minimum fēcērunt, they did the very least.

95. When a superlative is used partitively it usually precedes its noun; so also do the adjectives **medius, reliquus,** and **cēterus**:

Summus mōns, the top of the mountain.

Extrēma hieme, late in the winter.

Mediā aestāte, in midsummer.

Reliquī Gallī, the rest of the Gauls.

Cētera Graecia, the rest of Greece.

96. English offers adjectives in exchange for Latin relative clauses, prepositional phrases, and adverbs; also a noun with an adjective modifier in exchange for a single noun:

Eae rēs quae remorārī solent, the usual delays.

Sine nōmine scrīptae sunt, an anonymous letter.

Est contrā exempla, it is unprecedented.

Ācriter pugnātum est, there was sharp fighting.

Ūsus eīs auxiliō erat, practical experience was a great help to them.

97. One English noun with an adjective modifier may sometimes translate two Latin nouns joined by a conjunction:

Vīs et sententia, real meaning.

Religiō et metus, superstitious fear.

Ratiō et doctrīna, theoretical knowledge.

Aestus febrisque, a high fever.

Cūra et metus, fearful anxiety.

98. As a rule, an adjective in prose is not used in Latin with the name of a person unless such adjective has become a part of the name:

Alexander, vir fortissimus, the brave Alexander.
Alexander Magnus, Alexander the Great.

99. In English, there may be several disconnected adjective modifiers with one noun, but these, in Latin, must be connected:

In tot et tantīs malīs, in so many serious disasters.

Exercise 15

1. Greece consisted at first, not of a single state, but of many states. (33.)
2. In Greece, a king was the chief of a small number of inhabitants. (75.)
3. Attica seemed to be a large state, and it was a very easy thing to stir up the inhabitants of the different parts against one another. (93.)
4. The inhabitants of the plain were more influential than those of the mountain.
5. Those of the coast were the bravest of all. (90.)
6. There seemed to be one leader for each district. (86.)
7. Of the nobles, Pisistratus was the most shrewd and most daring; he was always on the alert for his own interests. (44.)
8. The cleverest of the nobles, Pisistratus, for three years tried to become their leader. (52.)
9. One market day, when there were many poor people in town, he smeared himself with blood and rode into their midst.

10. In a loud tone he exclaimed that bitter enemies had attacked him on account of his great loyalty toward his fellow-citizens. (70.)

11. He said also that these enemies were now less than two miles from the city. (92; 64; 87.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *At first, of Greece, there was not one state, but many states.*

4. *To be more influential:* **plūs posse** or **plūs valēre.**

7. *He was on the alert for his own interests = he consulted his own interests* (44) or *he was watchful* (**vigilāns**) *in his own affairs* (**rēbus**).

8. *Tried to make himself leader.*

9. *One market day* (82; 78). Show in this sentence the time of the act by the tense of the verb: *He, on a market day, on which day the town was filled,* etc., *when he had smeared* (subjunctive) *himself with blood, rode into their midst* (**in mediōs**).

10. *In a loud tone* or *with a great voice.* Show, by placing the prepositional phrase *toward his fellow-citizens* between the adjective and the noun, that his loyalty was great toward his fellow-citizens, not toward others: **summum in cīvēs suōs stūdium.** (10.)

Exercise 16

1. One to whom the crafty Pisistratus had told the whole plan asked the people for a guard of seventy-five men for him. (82; 56; 31.)

2. In a few words the wise Solon advised the people against this, but in vain did he do so. (98.)

3. Solon knew that Pisistratus was naturally cruel, and he saw that the unsuspicious were greatly influenced by what he said. (96.)

4. All these schemes seemed to him plainer than day. (88; 67.)

5. He knew that Pisistratus wished to make himself tyrant.

6. This name the Greeks at first gave to one who became king in a city where the law did not authorize it. (82; 80.)

7. Pisistratus was much more bold than brave. (89; 88.)

8. Twice in one year was he driven out of the city.

9. One party drove him to the plain; the other to the coast. (83.)

10. For the third time he made himself tyrant.

11. After this he seemed not only less cruel to his enemies, but even more faithful to his friends. (47; 48.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. *Against this:* **nē hoc faceret.**

3. *He knew that Pisistratus was* (present infinitive) *cruel by nature, and he saw that those who suspected nothing were greatly influenced* (present infinitive) *by those things which he had said.*

5. *It did not escape* (**fūgit**) *him that Pisistratus wished* (present infinitive) *to make himself tyrant.*

6. *In a city in which by law it was not allowed* (**licēbat**) *to be done.*

Exercise 17

1. Pisistratus in the latter part of his life became a much milder tyrant than he had been. (95; 89.)

2. As his advisers he chose members of his own family and others of high rank.

3. His own practical experience in many things proved a great advantage to him. (96; 49.)

4. He improved Athens with many lofty temples and magnificent buildings.

5. He had as many poets as could be found in the whole of Greece brought to Athens. (62, 12; 75; 58.)

6. He employed learned men to make necessary changes in the works of the old poets.

7. After this, these works were, therefore, considered much more valuable. (89.)

8. The two sons of Pisistratus succeeded him.

9. At first Athens flourished under their rule.

10. At length Hipparchus was assassinated for having spoken to a nobleman in a rather haughty tone; but Hippias, his brother, was not harmed at all. (88; 43; 55.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. *He chose his own* (*friends*) *and other nobles who might advise him in respect to all things.* (55.)

5. *He caused* (**cūrāvit**) *as many poets*, etc., *to be brought to Athens.* H 622 (544, 2, N. 2); LM 2250; A 294, *d*; G 430; B 337, 7, 2.

6. The statement *He employed learned men* tells us at once that he gave business or employment to learned men. These men were, of course, employed for a purpose, and this the Latin must show.

Again, the necessary changes must have depended upon the judgment of these learned men. This also must appear in the Latin sentence.

The real meaning (**vīs et sententia**) of this sentence is as follows:

He gave employment to learned men who might change as many of the poems of the old writers as they thought should be changed by them.

Now that we have the thought ready for the Latin, let us consider the order of the words to express this thought.

The fact that learned men were employed is important. We have a choice of two words, **doctī** and **ērudītī**, for the Latin word with which to begin, as both of these mean learned men.

A Roman would select the one which in his opinion would produce the better effect. (15.)

Express the relative clause next, then the **quot** clause, and end with the verb with which we begin in English.

We have not yet expressed the thought in the expression *necessary changes*. This must appear in the **quot** or **quam multa** clause, and necessity may be shown by the passive periphrastic conjugation.

It remains now to decide upon the mode. An infinitive will express the idea, since it is used with a verb of thinking.

9. *The two sons reigning* (74), *things in Athens* (77) *were most flourishing.*

10. *Hipparchus, because he had addressed* (**appellāvisset**) *a noble rather haughtily* (88), *was killed.*

Hippiās (Exercise 11, Suggestion 1).

Exercise 18

1. After the death of Hipparchus, his elder brother became cruel and suspicious. (74.)

2. Certain Athenians had been expelled from Athens by Pisistratus. (65; 68.)

3. The temple of Delphi, which had been destroyed by fire, the enemies of Pisistratus had contracted to rebuild.

4. Dodona, it is true, was more ancient than Delphi, but there is no doubt that the fame of Delphi was established in very early times. (67; 78.)

5. The builders of the temple not only worked very faithfully, but they did even more than they had promised. (89.)

6. In building parts for which the specifications had required only stone, they had used Parian marble. (79.)

7. The new temple was, therefore, worth more than the old one. (91; 67.)

8. The result of this was that the builders gained the greatest possible influence with the priests of the Sacred College. (55.)

9. In early times there was only one Pontifex. Sulla increased the number to fifteen. These were called 'Maiōrēs' and 'Minōrēs.'

10. Many think that the former were patricians and the latter, plebeians.

11. The Sacred College consisted of the whole number of pontifices. (33.)

12. The builders of the above-mentioned temple became again men of great influence among the Athenians, who felt grateful to them. (96; 72; 10.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. Begin the sentence with **Ā Pisistratō.**

3. See Exercise 17, Suggestion 5.

From this sentence it may be seen that the perfect participle shows that an act is completed, and the future

participle an act that is to be. *The temple burned by fire, to be rebuilt they had contracted for* (**locāverant**).

4. *There is no doubt that* (**nōn est dubium quīn**) *Delphi in very early times was* (perfect subjunctive) *celebrated.*

5. (*Those*) *who built the temple not only worked with great fidelity* (70), etc.

6. *Of* (*those*) *building they had demanded* (56) *that they use stone* (79) *in building certain parts* (use in with the ablative gerundive).

8. *The result of this was that* (**quō factum est ut**) *these men were very influential* (**plūrimum possent** or **valērent**).

12. Bring the prepositional phrase *among the Athenians* near the adjective *great* in order to show that it was among the Athenians that their influence was great: *Again did those who had built the new temple become of great, among the Athenians, influence.* (10.)

Exercise 19

1. To all inquiries of the Spartans, the priests kept answering, "You must free Athens." (50, 2.)

2. On account of their superstitious fear, they decided to drive Hippias out of Athens. (97; 65.)

3. Three different armies they sent against him.

4. The first was defeated; the second was driven out of the city, but two of the tyrant's children were captured; the third conquered Hippias, who had been driven from one place to another. (84; 83.)

5. An eyewitness describes many cases of heroism. (18; 20.)

6. In the very heart of the city there had been sharp fighting. (95; 96.)

7. After many serious troubles, Hippias, in order to recover his children, agreed to leave Attica. (99; 64; 40.)

8. Hoping that the Persians would restore him to his country, he went to the court of Darius.

9. It was he who pointed out to the Persians the plain of Marathon and the port most suitable for their great number of ships.

10. The plain of Marathon is about twenty-three miles from Athens.

11. One writer says that Hippias fell at Marathon; another, that he died on the island of Lemnos, on his return from Marathon. (83; 77; 16.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *To the Spartans inquiring, the priests answered.*

4. *Two of the tyrant's children:* **duo ex tyrannī līberīs.**

7. *Hippias said that he would go away from Attica.*

9. *He pointed out the plain of Marathon* (**campum Marathonium**).

10. Use **ab** with **Athēnīs.**

Observe that the expression *twenty-three miles* shows not extent of space, but distance from one place to another, which may be shown by either the accusative or the ablative without a preposition.

EXERCISE 20

1. The distinguishing part of the Roman dress was the toga, as that of the Greeks was the pallium.

2. The toga was a loose, flowing, woolen robe, which no one except a Roman citizen was allowed to wear.

3. Its use was forbidden to exiles and foreigners.

4. The toga of a rich man or a nobleman was much better and fuller than that of one less wealthy. (89.)

5. A toga of this kind was about fifteen feet long and twelve feet wide, circular at the bottom and open at the top down to the girdle. (53; 95.)

6. One part was drawn up and thrown back over the left shoulder; the other fell to the bottom of the feet. (83; 95.)

7. The part thrown back formed a fold in which many things might be carried and with which the face and head might be covered.

8. In early times, a Roman wore a toga even in time of war; it was, however, much more narrow than the one worn in time of peace. (89.)

9. Afterwards the sagum became the cloak of a Roman soldier.

10. A soldier wore the sagum over his armor.

SUGGESTIONS

1. **Gēns Rōmāna togāta est; palliāta est Graeca gēns.**

2. *The toga no one except a Roman citizen wore* (**gerēbat**).

3. *Exiles and foreigners were forbidden,* or *were not allowed, to wear the toga.*

5. *At the bottom:* **ab īmā.**

9. *In time of war:* **in bellō**; *in time of peace:* **in pāce.**

Exercise 21

1. As the toga was the symbol of peace, so the sagum was the sign of war. (62, 5.)

2. For years after the founding of the city, Roman men and women wore the toga. (52; 60.)

3. Afterwards the stola was the dress of a Roman matron.

4. A man usually wore a white toga.

5. There were dark-colored or black togas, it is true, but these were worn by the very poor, or by accused persons, or by those in mourning.

6. Every one, whether rich or poor, took great pains to adjust his toga so that it would hang well and not drag.

7. The rich had special togas for special occasions. (45; 86.)

8. In battle a general had one toga, in a triumph another. (83.)

9. The former was called 'palūdāmentum,' the latter, the robe of victory.

10. Magistrates, certain priests, boys under seventeen, and girls until their marriage wore the toga bordered with purple, called 'toga praetexta.' (52; 92.)

11. A young man over seventeen laid aside this toga and put on the 'toga virīlis.' (52; 92.)

12. Cicero tells us that the usual time for putting on the 'toga virīlis' was March 21, in honor of Bacchus. (96; 29.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Show the contrast in this sentence by employing the figure Chiasmus. (See Grammar.)

5. *Those in mourning:* express by the present participle of **lūgeō**.

6. *That it might not be uneven:* **nē impar dissidēret**; *and might not drag:* **nec dēflueret.**

10. *Boys under seventeen = boys born less than seventeen years; until her marriage = until she put on the veil.*

USES OF PRONOUNS

100. Ego, *I*, **nōs**, *we*, **tū**, *you* (sing.), **vōs**, *you* (pl.), are to be expressed in Latin either to show emphasis or contrast, or to separate other words for the purpose of making them emphatic.

101. If **ego** is expressed, give it the first place in the sentence, or put it as near the beginning as the rights of other words will permit.

102. **Nōs**, the 'editorial *we*,' either expressed or implied in the verb, is of frequent use. Do not, however, use the plural **vōs** for the singular **tū**:

Quod ante dēmōnstrāvimus, which I have before mentioned.

103. **Meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,** when personal pronouns, are commonly objective genitives:

Nē patiantur dēsīderiō suī Catilīnam miserum tābēscere, let them not allow Catiline to pine away in misery because of his longing for them.

104. As a rule the genitives **nostrŭm** and **vestrŭm**, not **nostrī** and **vestrī**, are used with words denoting a part:

Nostrŭm and **vestrŭm** are regularly found with **omnium**:

Nē cuī vestrŭm mīrum esse videātur, lest it may seem strange to any one of you.

Nostrŭm omnium memorēs erant, they were mindful of us all.

105. The expressions **inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē** are used so often that it would be well to learn them:

Inter nōs differimus,	we differ from one another.
Inter vōs differtis,	you differ from one another.
Inter sē differunt,	they differ from one another.

These expressions may mean *from each other* if the reference is to two.

106. **Sē** and **suus** sometimes refer to the real subject, although this may not be the grammatical subject:

Sunt sua praemia laudī, virtue has its own reward. (To virtue are its own rewards.)

107. Remember that **meus**, *my*, **tuus**, *your*, **noster**, *our*, **vester**, *your*, **suus**, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, depend upon the object possessed, not upon the possessor, for their gender, number, and case:

Domum suam vēndidit, he has sold his house, she has sold her house.

108. Distinguish between **tuus**, *your*, and **vester**, *your*.

Tuus refers to one owner or possessor, and **vester** to more than one:

Tē tuaque dēdidistī, you surrendered yourself and your possessions.

Vōs vestraque dēdidistis, you surrendered yourselves and your possessions.

109. **Meus**, **tuus**, **suus**, **noster**, and **vester** are commonly used where one might expect a subjective genitive; these possessive pronouns do, however, sometimes represent an objective genitive:

Amīcitia nostra tuī, our friendship for you.

Tuā fīdūciā, because of their confidence in you.

110. Unless contrast is to be shown, possessives are often placed after their nouns:

Maiōrēs nostrī, our ancestors (not our contemporaries).

Nostrī maiōrēs, our ancestors (not your ancestors).

Uses of Hīc

111. **Hīc**, the demonstrative of the first person, points out what is near the speaker, and its meaning depends upon the context. It may be used to continue the thought of a preceding sentence:

Huius vitia sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, his vices were balanced by his virtues. (The vices of this person who has been mentioned.)

112. **Hīc** may be used to introduce a new thought:

Eōs hoc moneō, I give them this advice. (I advise them as follows.)

113. **Hīc** may be used to bring a person or thing in imagination before an audience:

Haec, domus; haec erat villa, this was the house, this the villa. (Imagine this to be the house, this the villa.)

114. **Hīc** may mean a client or defendant:

Hīc neque suō neque amīcōrum iūdiciō revincētur, this man (my client) will be convicted neither by his own testimony nor by that of his friends.

Observe that where we say 'that of,' 'those of,' the pronoun is omitted in Latin.

115. **Hīc,** when used with **ille,** may mean 'latter' or 'former':

Ita illum maeror, hōs laetitia tardāvit, as sorrow retarded the former, so joy delayed the latter.

Uses of Iste

116. **Iste,** the demonstrative of the second person, points out something near the person spoken to:

Claude istum librum, close that book of yours.

117. A speaker often uses the word **iste** in such a tone as to show contempt for the person addressed:

Quae tua est ista vīta? what kind of a life is that of yours?

118. **Iste**, however, may be used in a complimentary sense:

Fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs, there was, once upon a time, in this state, such valor (as you might boast of).

Uses of Ille

119. **Ille** points out an object remote from the speaker:

Ille liber, that book over there.

120. **Ille**, as a rule, is used of ancient, **hīc**, of modern times or celebrities:

Ille Dēmosthenes, the famous Demosthenes.

121. **Ille** may express our word *the* when *the* refers to something that is well known:

Apud Tenedum pugna illa nāvālis, the sea fight off Tenedos.

122. **Ille** is frequently used to point out a new or different subject; hence **illud** is so often found in anticipation of what is to follow, when we should expect no word at all:

Illud nōn intellegō, quam ob rem īre velint, I do not understand why they wish to go.

123. **Ille . . . hīc** are used together in contrasts to mean *the former . . . the latter, the latter . . . the former.*

Hīc, as a rule, refers to the nearer noun, but it may refer to the noun which, although more remote, is of more importance to the speaker:

Īgnāvia corpus hebetat, labor fīrmat; illa mātūram senectūtem, hīc longam adulēscentiam reddit, laziness weakens the body, work strengthens it; the former hastens old age, the latter prolongs youth.

Haec in nostrā, illa in deōrum manū sunt, the former are in our hands, the latter in the hands of the gods.

Uses of Is

124. **Is** may supply the place of the lacking personal pronoun of the third person; it is to be expressed if the subject is emphatic or if contrast is to be shown:

Is sibi lēgātiōnem suscēpit, *he* took upon himself the duties of an ambassador.

125. **Is** may refer to something that precedes or to something that follows. Where we repeat a proper name **is** is frequently used:

Is coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he (Orgetorix, previously mentioned) formed a conspiracy.

Eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum expugnārent, with this design, namely, that, if they could, they would storm the fort.

126. **Is** may mean *a, the, such:*

Is liber, a book.

Ea rēs, the fact.

Is es, you are such a person.

Uses of Ipse

127. **Ipse,** *self,* the intensive pronoun, adds emphasis to the word which it modifies:

Ipse fēcī,	I did it myself.
Ipse fēcistī,	you did it yourself.
Ipse fēcit,	he did it himself.
Ipsī fēcimus,	we did it ourselves.
Ipsī fēcistis,	you did it yourselves.
Ipsi fēcērunt,	they did it themselves.

128. Some of the translations of **ipse** may be best learned from examples:

In ipsō Pompēiō haec facta sunt, *in the case of* Pompey this was done.

Nē cunctētur ipse, let there be no delay *on his part.*

Vīta ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, the *actual* time of life is short.

Ipse Palinūrus dīcere nōn potest, *even* Palinurus cannot tell.

Ipsō eōdem tempore vēnērunt, they came at *exactly* the same time.

Cuius ipsō nōmine perterrēbantur, at the *mere* mention of his name they were thoroughly frightened.

Ipse eōs dūxit, it was a personally conducted excursion; he led them *in person.*

Satis in ipsā cōnscientiā pulcherrimī factī frūctūs est, the *very* consciousness of a noble action is sufficient reward.

Omnia quae vindicāris in alterō tibi ipsī vehementer fugienda sunt, all things that you condemn in another you *especially* ought to avoid.

Valvae sē ipsae aperuērunt, the folding doors opened *of their own accord.*

Uses of Īdem

129. **Īdem,** *the same,* may unite two or more attributes to the same person or thing.

130. Some of the renderings of **īdem** may be learned from examples:

Īdem velle atque nōlle, ea dēmum fīrma amīcitia est, to have the *same* likes and dislikes is the most lasting bond of friendship.

Quid praeclārum nōn idem arduum? what excellence is there that is not *at the same time* hard to attain?

Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem, nothing is beneficial which may not *also* prove harmful.

Ōrātiōnem splendidam et eandem facētam habuit, he delivered an oration that was brilliant and *likewise* full of wit.

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es īdem, you are *at once* cross and kind, pleasant and bitter.

Uses of the Relative Pronoun

131. The meaning of a relative pronoun is often dependent upon the mode of its verb. If it introduces a cause, a purpose, a fact, etc., the translation should show it:

Ō fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris.

O fortunate man, because you found Homer to herald your brave deeds (**quī** is equivalent to **cum tū**).

Legiōnēs in Galliam quī dēdūceret lēgātum mīsit, he sent a lieutenant to lead the legions down into Gaul (**quī** is equivalent to **ut is**).

Proximī sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, they are next to the Germans who live across the Rhine.

132. Express the relative in Latin even when it is omitted in English:

Haec est puella quam vīdī, this is the girl I saw.

133. An indefinite antecedent of a relative pronoun is usually omitted:

Duōs quī sequitur leporēs neutrum capit, he who follows two hares catches neither.

134. The regular place for a relative pronoun is near its antecedent. If, however, the relative is equivalent to **et is,**

and he, **is igitur**, *he therefore*, etc., and is used to connect, rather than define or describe, it may be separated from its antecedent:

Themistoclēs vēnī ad tē, quī mala in domum tuam intulī, I, Themistocles, have come to you, and I have brought trouble on your home.

135. A relative pronoun may be used at the beginning of a Latin sentence, where we should expect a demonstrative pronoun:

Quae cum ita sint, since these things are so; although these things are so; this being the case.

136. When a relative pronoun does not or cannot refer grammatically to what precedes, it has its own noun following it:

Thēbās, quod est Boeōtiae caput, profectī sunt, they started for Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

137. The antecedent noun may be repeated in the relative clause:

Diem dīcunt, quā diē omnēs conveniant, they set a day on which all are to assemble.

138. A noun which is further explained by a relative pronoun is placed after the relative, not before it:

Nōn longē ā Tolosātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā, they are not far from Tolosa, a city which is in the province.

139. To make a relative clause emphatic, place the relative with its antecedent noun before the antecedent clause:

Quam legiōnem sēcum habet, eam in castra mittet, the legion which he has with him he will send into camp.

140. **Id quod, quod** alone, or **quae rēs** is commonly used when the relative refers to a sentence:

Domum vēndidērunt, id quod stultissimum est, they have sold their house, which is a very foolish thing to do.

Uses of Quis, Quī Interrogative

141. **Quis, quid,** ask for the name of some person or thing; **quis** is often used substantively, **quid** is regularly so used:

Quis sim, sciēs ex eō quem ad tē mīsī, who I am, you will know from him whom I have sent to you.

142. **Quis,** the interrogative pronoun, used substantively, may, as a rule, be either masculine or feminine.

143. **Quī** and **quod** are, as a rule, used adjectively:

Quī gladiātor? what kind of a gladiator?

Quod templum vīdistī? what temple have you seen?

144. Remember the adverbial use of **quid,** *why,* in the neuter singular accusative:

Quid tacēs? why are you silent?

Uses of Indefinite Pronouns

QUIS

145. Keep in mind the fact that **quis** after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** is indefinite and means *any:*

Num quis est hīc alius praeter mē atque tē? there is not any one else here except you and me, is there?

QUISQUAM

146. **Quisquam** means *any one at all;* its corresponding adjective is **ūllus:**

Quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs, as long as there is any one who will dare to defend you, you will live.

Quae fuit umquam in ūllō homine tanta cōnstantia? was any man ever as loyal as he?

147. **Quisquam** is found in conditional sentences, when the condition is general:

Sī quisquam, Caesar fēlīx fuit, if any one in the world was ever fortunate, it was Caesar.

148. **Quisquam** may be used in interrogative sentences implying a negative answer:

Quisquam dubitābit quīn fierī possit? will any one doubt (no one will doubt) that it can be done?

149. **Quisquam** is used with a comparative:

Acerbior hostis quam quisquam superiōrum, he was a more bitter enemy than any one of former times.

150. Remember that *no one* is to be rendered by **nēmō**, not **nōn quisquam**; *nothing*, by **nihil**, not **nōn quicquam**. *And no one*, however, is expressed by **neque quisquam**; *and nothing*, by **neque quicquam**:

Neque praeter mercātōrēs illō adiit quisquam, and not any one except traders went there.

Neque quicquam videō altius, and I see nothing (not anything) higher.

QUISQUIS

151. Be careful to distinguish between **quisquam**, *any one*, in which only the first part is declined, and **quisquis**, *whoever*, in which both parts are declined:

Quisquis dīcit, whoever says.

Quidquid / **Quicquid** } **erit,** whatever happens.

ALIQUIS

152. Express *some*, as opposed to *none*, by **aliquis**:

Tū quidem aliquis es, you, surely, are somebody.

Sine aliquō perīculō id facere nōn possunt, they cannot do that without some danger.

153. **Nesciō quis** is sometimes used instead of **aliquis**; **nesciō quid**, instead of **aliquid**:

Nesciō quis, some one or other.

Nesciō quō pactō, in some way or other.

QUIDAM

154. Some of the renderings of **quīdam** may be learned from examples:

Graviōra quaedam sunt remedia perīculīs, *some* remedies are worse than the disease.

Scrīptor quīdam narrat, *a certain* writer says.

Nōn solum scīre aliquid artis est, sed quaedam ars etiam docendī, not only is there some art required in understanding a thing, but there is *an* art also in teaching it.

Doctrīna est ingenī nātūrāle quoddam pābulum, learning is, *as it were*, the natural food of the mind.

Quādam dēclīnātiōne corpore, by *a* hair-breadth escape (by a turning aside with the body).

Artēs habent quoddam commūne vinculum, the arts have a common bond, *so to speak*.

Cōgnātiōne quādam inter sē continentur, they are connected by *a kind of* relationship.

Quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit, *one* of the soldiers of the tenth legion said.

QUISQUE

155. **Quisque** means *each*, *every* (of more than two); **uterque**, *each*, *both* (of two); **omnis**, *every*, *all*, is not as definite as **quisque**:

Māteria cuiusque generis est praeter fāgum atque abietem, timber of *every* kind except the beech and the fir is found here.

Utraeque periērunt, *both* wives perished.

Omnis in Ascaniō cārī stat cūra parentis, *every* thought of a doting father is centered in Ascanius.

156. Remember that **quisque** is used:

1. With **sē**:

Prō sē quisque operam nāvāre cupit, each one is anxious to do his best for his own sake.

2. With **suus**:

Sua quisque exempla dēbet aequō animō patī, each one ought to bear patiently the results of his own misconduct.

3. With a relative pronoun:

Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, cōnstitit, wherever each one happened to come from his work, there he halted.

4. With **ūnus**:

Ūnīus cuiusque cōnfessiō, the confession of each and every one.

5. With an ordinal number:

Cēnsōrēs sextō quōque annō dēlēctī sunt, censors were chosen every five years (every sixth year).

6. With a superlative:

Antīquissimum quodque tempus, the earliest times (every most ancient time).

Exercise 22

1. The ancient Romans were very fond of agriculture.

2. Their most illustrious commanders were sometimes called from the plow.

3. Roman senators commonly lived in the country and cultivated the ground with their own hands. (76; 68.)

4. In the time of our ancestors this work was done in some parts of our country by slaves. (68.)

5. Nowadays, however, in our country, no one can be a slave. (78; 75.)

6. The famous Cincinnatus had a farm of four acres. (120; 45.)

7. Roman writers represent Cincinnatus plowing at the time at which he was made dictator. (137; 21.)

8. (Let us imagine the scene.) This is Cincinnatus at work plowing; this, the messenger who has come from Rome. (113; 65.)

9. The latter has been sent by the senate to summon the former to Rome to protect the state. (115; 58; 49.)

10. The power of the dictator was supreme both in peace and in war.

11. His edict was observed as an oracle. (62, 7.)

Exercise 23

1. Forgetful of himself and mindful of us all, Cincinnatus started immediately for Rome. (103; 104; 58.)

2. He knew that it would be dangerous to delay.

3. Therefore, he raised an army as soon as possible and led it in person. (128.)

4. At a favorable time his own army and that of the consul surrounded the enemy's camp. (128; 114.)

5. He reduced the enemy's army to a condition exactly the same as that of the Romans had been. (128; 62; 114.)

6. By that victory of yours, Cincinnatus, the state was saved. (118.)

7. A dictator even within the city limits was attended by twenty-four lictors carrying the fasces and the axes. (128.)

8. Cincinnatus resigned the dictatorship in fourteen days. (64; 78.)

9. He was very glad when the day on which he could return to his home came. (137; 58, 8.)

10. When he was an old man, he was likewise chosen dictator, and again there was no delay on his part when he was summoned to Rome. (130; 128; 58, 1.)

11. Very often, Romans, did Cincinnatus show his friendship for you.

SUGGESTIONS

2. *That it would be dangerous to delay:* **morārī futūrum esse perīculōsum.**

4. In the expression *that of the consul, that* is not to be translated.

8. *Resigned the dictatorship:* **sē dictātūrā abdicāvit.**

10. *He, old, was likewise chosen dictator, and again* (when) *summoned to Rome, himself did not hesitate to start immediately.*

11. *For you:* **in vōs.**

Exercise 24

1. (It was) in the war with the Latins, a time at which the Romans feared this people, (that) the first dictator was chosen. (138; 44.)

2. There were certain things which the Romans did not allow a dictator to do. (154.)

3. One who had been made dictator had to remain in Italy, where he had been appointed. (82; 21, 2; 50, 1.)

4. He could not go out of Italy — a statement that I have already made. (140.)

5. This was violated only once, when Atilius is said to have gone to Athens, which was the capital of Attica. (135; 136.)

6. The infantry, in which the people had confidence, was the strength of the Roman army. (16.)

7. For this reason a dictator was not allowed to appear on horseback. (69.)

8. He, however, usually chose the one whom he thought suitable for master of horse. (Exercise 14, Suggestion 2.)

9. A dictator resigned when he had finished the business for which he had been appointed.

10. The day came on which there were no dictators — in name. (137.)

Exercise 25

1. Every Roman wished to have his own villa. (156, 2.)

2. A Roman villa was not unlike a small city. (47.)

3. It had buildings of every kind. (45; 155.)

4. Every villa had its own park of many acres; every villa had also a tower, in which there was a dining room, where the guests while reclining at table might enjoy a beautiful view. (45; 106; 156, 2.)

5. Wherever a Roman built a villa, he cultivated many beautiful trees and flowers. (156, 3.)

6. In the garden of each villa there were placed many beautiful statues. (155.)

7. Every two years the rich used to set out trees in their villas. (156, 5.)

8. The most beautiful gardens were sometimes watered, when there was no water in the ground, by the water conveyed in pipes. (156, 6.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *For himself* (**pro sē**) *each one wished.*

5. *In which places a Roman built a villa, in those places,* etc.

8. *By the water led to them through lead pipes.*

Exercise 26

1. If any one was always firm or mild, as occasion required, it was Caesar. (146.)

2. He was no ordinary man.

3. No one, it is true, was a more bitter enemy in time of war.

4. Does any one doubt that he was a much more faithful friend, after the war was over, than was any one of his contemporaries? (148; 89; 74; 78.)

5. Not only men, but also animals, loved him.

6. When he was in Gaul, he rode a horse which no one else dared to mount. (11.)

7. He was singularly careful of his soldiers, and no one was more loved by his men. (150; 68.)

8. There was no undertaking so difficult that he could not carry it through successfully.

9. Did any general ever show so much pity toward those whom he had conquered?

10. He was always willing to help his soldiers without asking anything in return. (150.)

11. Caesar's lieutenants except Labienus were all faithful to him.

SUGGESTIONS

1. *As occasion required* is equivalent to *as the thing demanded.*

3. **In bellō** will express *in time of war.*

4. Keep in mind the fact that the verb **dubitō**, meaning *doubt*, regularly takes **quīn** with the subjunctive; also, that the tense must be carefully observed.

In this sentence express *was* by the perfect subjunctive.

Contemporaries are 'those living at the same time.'

7. *He protected* (**cōnservāvit**) *his* (soldiers) *very diligently.*

8. *There was nothing so difficult which he could not finish* (**cōnficere nōn posset**).

9. *Was there in any general so much pity for* (in) *the conquered* (accusative)?

Introduce this question by **num.**

10. *To his own* (men) *always was he willing to give aid, and not anything from them* (**ab iīs**) *did he demand* (**repetēbat**).

QUESTIONS

157. 'Yes' and 'No' questions are usually shown by:

-ne (enclitic), when an answer is desired; **nōnne**, when the answer yes is expected; **num**, when the answer no is expected:

Ībisne, will you go?
Nōnne ībis, you will go, will you not? will you not go?
Num ībis, you will not go, will you?

158. Do not use **ne, nōnne, num**, if there is an interrogative word in the sentence:

Hōra quota est? what time is it?

Ut valēs?
Quid agis? } how do you do? how are you?
Ecquid fit? any news?
Ubinam gentium sumus? where in the world are we?

159. Do not forget the following interrogatives which are in common use:

cūr, adv., for what reason? why?
quā dē causā, for what reason? why?
quam ob rem, for what reason? why?
quā rē, for what reason? why?
quālis, e, adj., of what kind?
quam multī, how many?
quandō, adv., when?
quantus, a, um, adj., how large?
quem ad modum, how?
quīn, adv., why not?
quis { **quid** / **quī** { **quod** } interrog. pro., who? which? what?
quid, pro., adverbial accusative, why?
quō, adv., to what place? whither?
quot, indeclinable adj., how many?
quotiēns, adv., how many times?
ubi, adv., where? in what place? when?
unde, adv., from what place? whence?
ut, adv., how?
uter, utra, utrum, adj., which of two?

160. At times the interrogative particle is omitted; especially is this the case when surprise, indignation, or censure is shown:

Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentis? don't you feel that your schemes are known?

161. The following will show that a Roman sometimes expressed surprise, indignation, or an impossible supposition in the form of a question:

Tū ut umquam tē corrigās? *you* ever reform? (Impossible.)

Dictātōremne ex urbe exīre? a *dictator* go out of the city? (One cannot suppose such a case.)

162. An interrogative word, except the enclitic **ne**, is usually placed first in a sentence, but it may be moved to the second or third place for the purpose of making some other word or words emphatic:

Ubi fuistī? where were you?

Hī quid exspectant? what are *these* traitors waiting for?

Nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? now, really what kind of a life is that of yours?

163. Remember that two questions, the first of which is very short, may be used as an introduction to the real question:

Quid? Quid est? Quid vērō? etc., may express the English 'by the way,' 'tell me,' 'well,' 'now,' 'again,' etc.

Quid est, Catilīna? ecquid attendis? well, Catiline, are you paying any attention at all?

164. In double direct questions the first part either has no interrogative particle or is introduced by **utrum**, or the enclitic **ne**.

'Is the last syllable short or long?' may be expressed as follows:

Postrēma syllaba brevis est an longa?

Utrum postrēma syllaba brevis est an longa?

Postrēma syllaba brevisne est an longa?

165. *Or not* in double direct questions is commonly expressed by **annōn**:

Isne est quem quaerō annōn? is that the one I am looking for or not?

166. In Latin, as in English, questions requiring no answer are often used instead of negative declarative sentences:

Quis tam brevī tempore tot loca adīre potuit? who could have visited so many places in so short a time? (No one could have visited so many places in so short a time.)

Quid ego Ōstiēnse incommodum querar? why should I complain of the defeat at Ostia? (I should not complain of the defeat at Ostia.)

Indirect Questions

167. Remember that an indirect question is a clause introduced by an interrogative word and that the clause depends on verbs or expressions of asking, telling, knowing, seeing, hearing, wondering, doubting, and the like.

168. In English we may use the same form of a verb in both direct and indirect questions. In Latin prose, however, the subjunctive is commonly the mode of the verb in an indirect question.

169. The use of the tenses in indirect questions may be best understood from examples:

Mīror quid faciant, I wonder what they are doing.

Mīror quid factūrī sint, I wonder what they will do, *or* intend to do.

Mīror quid fēcerint, I wonder what they did.

Mīrātus sum quid facerent, I wondered what they did.

Mīrātus sum quid fēcissent, I wondered what they had done.

Mīrātus sum quid factūrī essent, I wondered what they would do.

Mīrātus sum quid factūrī fuerint, I wondered what they would have done.

170. In a single indirect question the words *whether* and *if* may be expressed in Latin by **num, si, -ne**:

Num quid vellēs rogāvī, I asked whether you wished anything.

Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant, the enemy kept waiting to see whether (if) our men would cross this swamp.

Quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī, he asked me whether I should like to go to camp with him.

171. In a double indirect question *whether . . . or* may be expressed in Latin by,—

	utrum . . . an
whether . . . or not by	**utrum . . . necne**
	—— **. . . necne**

Rogāvērunt utrum pugnāvissent necne, they asked whether they had fought or not.

Dīxit sē castra mōtūrum ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret, he said that he would break camp so that he could know as soon as possible whether a sense of honor and duty or a feeling of fear was the greater among them.

Quaesīvī ā Catilīnā ad Laecam fuisset necne, I asked Catiline whether he had been at Laeca's or not.

Exercise 27

1. Romulus divided the people of Rome into tribes, did he not? (157.)

2. He divided the people into three tribes, and each tribe into ten curiae. (155.)

3. The number of tribes was not always the same, was it? (157; 129.)

4. The number of tribes was increased to thirty-five, but the number of curiae remained the same as it had been. (62, 6.)

5. Do you know how many there were in a legion when Romulus was king? (157; 159; 168; 74.)

6. Romulus chose from each tribe one thousand foot soldiers and one hundred horsemen. (155; 87.)

7. There were, therefore, at this time, three thousand foot soldiers and three hundred horsemen in a legion. (32; 87.)

8. Into how many ranks were the Romans at first divided? (159.)

9. They were divided into two ranks, the patricians and the plebeians, who were connected as patrons and clients.

10. Afterwards, however, a third order, the equites, was added.

Exercise 28

1. By whom was the Roman senate instituted? (68; 159.)

2. It was instituted by Romulus, that it might be the perpetual council of the republic. (68; Exercise 14, Suggestion 3.)

3. Of how many did it consist at that time? (159; 33; 32.)

4. There were at first one hundred in the Roman senate.

5. Were these chosen from the patricians or from the plebeians? (164.)

6. They were chosen from the former, and they were called 'patres,' both on account of their age and their fatherly care of the state.

7. How many senators were there in the reign of Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome? (159.)

8. There were three hundred.

9. Do you remember whether Sulla increased the number or not? (157; 171.)

10. He did increase the number, but how many he added is uncertain. (159; 169.)

11. Julius Caesar is said to have increased the number to nine hundred. Augustus, however, reduced it to six hundred.

SUGGESTION

9. *Do you remember?* **Meministīne?**

Exercise 29

1. Did you ask if Roman senators had always been called '**patrēs cōnscrīptī**'? (157; 170; 21.)

2. Those who were chosen into the senate by Brutus after the expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus were called '**cōnscrīptī.**'

3. For this reason we can understand why both **patrēs** and **cōnscrīptī** were summoned to the senate. (159; 167; 168; 169.)

4. By whom was the senate assembled? (159.)

5. At first by the kings; after the expulsion of the Tarquins, the senate was assembled by the consuls, and in their absence by the praetors. (68; 74.)

6. Did the military tribunes or the tribunes of the commons ever assemble the senate? (164.)

7. Yes indeed, and the tribunes of the commons, even in the presence of the consuls and against their will, often summoned the senate. (74.)

8. A *tribune* summon the senate against the will of the *consuls?* (161.)

9. Now, who of you who have read Cicero's letters can doubt this? (163; 159; 104.)

10. A decree of the senate could not be made when there was not a quorum.

11. What that number was is uncertain. (159; 167; 168; 169.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. *After the expulsion of Tarquinius Superbus:* **post Tarquinium Superbum exāctum.**

5. *In their absence:* **cum abessent** or **hīs absentibus.**

7. *Yes indeed:* **immō vērō.**

In the presence of the consuls and against their will: **praesentibus cōnsulibus et invītīs.**

10. *When there was not a quorum:* **cum senātōrum numerus lēgitimus nōn adesset.**

Exercise 30

1. Did municipia, coloniae, and praefecturae differ from one another? (157; 105.)

2. Municipia were foreign towns which obtained the rights of Roman citizens.

3. Were municipia all of the same kind? (157.)

4. Some had very many of the rights of Roman citizens.

5. Did the municipia use their own laws or (those) of the Roman people? (164; 79.)

6. Heraclea, Naples, and other cities preferred to be allied by treaty.

7. Colonies were cities or lands which Roman citizens were sent to inhabit.

8. The people determined how the lands were to be divided and among whom, did they not? (157; 159.)

9. Each colony usually had a patron whose duty it was to consult its interests at Rome. (155; 45; 49; 44; 39.)

10. Towns which had been ungrateful to Rome were reduced to the form of a praefectura.

11. They enjoyed the rights neither of free towns nor of colonies. (79.)

12. The Roman senate could impose taxes on them and make such demands as they wished.

SUGGESTIONS

4. **Alia cīvium Rōmānōrum iūra plūrima tenēbant.**

5. Put the adjective *Roman* after the noun with which it agrees.

6. *Allied by treaty:* **cīvitātēs foederātae.**

7. *To inhabit* expresses purpose. (40.)

8. *To be divided:* future passive participle.

10. *To reduce to the form of a praefectura:* **in praefectūram redigere.**

12. *Make such demands*, etc.: demand from them those things which they wished.

Impose: **impōnere.** Remember that this is a compound of the preposition **in** and the verb **pōnō**; the former will take the dative, the latter the accusative.

IMPERATIVE MODE

172. Commands are of different kinds. They may appear as orders, requests, prayers, wishes, exhortations, etc., and may be expressed by the imperative, the subjunctive, and the indicative:

Sēcrētō amīcōs admonē, laudā palam, admonish your friends in private, praise them in public.

Ab aliō spectēs alterī quod fēceris, what you do to another, expect another to do to you.

Quīn abīs? why don't you go away? do go away.

173. Instead of the positive imperative, **cūrā (cūrātō) ut, fac (facitō)** with the subjunctive are often used:

Cūrā ut vir sīs, be sure to act the man.

Fac cogitēs, do think.

174. The future imperative is found in laws, maxims, etc.; in other cases also, when it is evident that the reference is to future time:

Rēgiō imperiō duo suntō et appellantor cōnsulēs, there shall be two vested with the power of king, and they shall be called consuls.

Īgnōscitō saepe alterī, numquam tibi, forgive another often; yourself, never.

Facitō aliquid operis, be busy about something.

175. Keep in mind the fact that **mementō (mentōte)**, *remember*, and **scītō (scītōte)**, *know*, *rest assured*, have regularly the form of the future:

Mementōte esse hōs pertimēscendōs, remember that it is these who are to be greatly feared.

Scītōte hoc in rē pūblicā sēmināriuṁ Catilīnārum futūrum, rest assured that in the state there will still be this nursery of Catilines.

176. The future indicative is considered more courteous than the imperative in a sentence of this type:

Sī poteris venīre, veniēs, come if you can.

177. The following are for reference, and it would be well to learn them:

1. **Audē sapere,** dare to be wise.
2. **Audī, vidē, tacē, sī vīs vīvere in pāce,** listen, observe, but hold your tongue, if you would live in peace.
3. **Amā nōs et valē et salvē,** good-by, God bless you.
4. **Amō tē,** much obliged.
5. **Carpe diem, quam minimē crēdula posterō,** improve the opportunities of to-day, trusting as little as possible to to-morrow.
6. **Cautus sīs,** be careful.
7. **Cavē quid dīcās, quandō et cui,** be careful what you say, when, and to whom.
8. **Cūrā ut valeās,** take care of yourself.
9. **Dā dextram miserō,** help one in distress.
10. **Emās nōn quod opus est, sed quod necesse est,** buy not what you want, but what you need.
11. **Ēs, bibe, animō obsequere,** eat, drink, and be merry.
12. **Fac me certiōrem,** let me know.
13. **Fēstīnā lentē,** make haste slowly, be prudent.
14. **Hae tibi erunt artēs,** be these thy arts.
15. **Īgnōsce mihi,** pardon me.
16. **Nārrō tibi,** let me tell you.
17. **Nōsce tē ipsum,** know thyself.
18. **Notā bene (N.B.),** note well, take notice.

19. **Puerīs salūtem dīcitō**, remember me to the children.
20. **Pete alta**, aim high.
21. **Redīte, quaesō, in memoriam**, please try to remember.
22. **Saepe stylum vertās**, turn the stylus often.
23. **Venī sī mē amās**, do please come.
24. **Vidē et crēde**, see and believe.
25. **Vīve valēque**, long life and health to you.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

178. Negative commands or prohibitions may be expressed by:

1. **Nōlī** or **nōlīte** with the present infinitive:

Nōlī īre, don't go.

2. **Cavē**, *be on your guard*, **fac** or **vidē**, *see to it*, with the subjunctive; the former, with or without **nē**, the latter with **nē**:

Cavē nē eās, don't go.
Cavē īgnōscās, don't pardon, don't forgive.
Fac nē quid aliud cūrēs, don't attend to anything else.

3. **Nē** with the imperative:

Nē timē, don't be afraid.

4. **Nē** with the present subjunctive:

Āctum nē agās, don't waste time on what is done.

5. **Nē** with the perfect subjunctive:

Quod tibi fierī nōn vīs alterī nē fēceris, do not to another what you would not have him do to you.

6. **Nōn** with the future indicative:

Sī invītus veniēs, nōn veniēs, if you are unwilling to come, don't come.

Exercise 31

1. To a friend who wishes to remain with him in Gaul Caesar speaks as follows. (112.)

2. Remember that a soldier will have to obey the commander-in-chief. (175; 50, 4.)

3. Notice carefully all orders and obey at once. (177.)

4. Listen to what is said, observe what is done, but say nothing unless you are asked. (177.)

5. If you can do so, come occasionally to the general's quarters; if, however, you do not wish to come, don't come. (176; 178, 6.)

6. Never ask why something is to be done. It is (the duty) of a soldier to obey without asking 'why.' (159; 152; 168.)

7. Rest assured that the commander-in-chief will praise you if you deserve it. (175.)

8. Be bold or cautious, as occasion demands. (177.)

9. Be sure to gain the civic crown. (173.)

10. You know what the 'civic crown' is, do you not? (157; 168.)

11. A crown of oak leaves shall be given to a soldier who has saved the life of a citizen in battle and at the same time killed an enemy. (174.)

12. Let me know whether you will remain with us or not. (177; 171.)

Suggestions

1. *To a friend he speaks as follows:* **cum amīcō suō conloquitur haec.**

2. Use the infinitive after the verb *remember.*

3. Express 3 and 4 in this way: *Notice well all* (things) *ordered and these obey at once. Hear* (things) *said; see* (things) *done; not having been asked, say nothing.*

6. *It is* (the duty) *of a soldier to do* (the things) *ordered, not to ask why they are to be done* (future passive participle).

7. Express *will praise* by the future infinitive. The verb *deserve* has the *form* of the English present, but its time is not present. Since the deserving must precede the praising, it will be necessary to show it in Latin.

Express *deserve* by the perfect subjunctive.

12. Do not forget that **cum** is an enclitic when used with **mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs,** and usually with the relative and the interrogative pronoun.

mēcum, with me. **nōbīscum**, with us.
tēcum, with you. **vōbīscum**, with you.
sēcum, with him, her, it, them (referring to the subject).
quōcum, quibuscum, with whom.

INFINITIVE

179. The present and the perfect infinitive, the former more commonly than the latter, may be used as neuter nouns in the nominative and accusative:

Incipere multō facilius est quam impetrāre, beginning a task is much easier than completing it.

Incipe; dīmidium factī est coepisse, begin; beginning is half the battle.

180. The present infinitive may be used to complete the meaning of certain verbs, the most common of which are:

possum, I am able, I can. **cōnstituō**, I decide.
dēbeō, I ought. **audeō**, I dare.
cōnor, I try. **incipiō**, I begin.
soleō, I am accustomed. **coepī**, I began.
dubitō, I hesitate. **volō**, I wish, am willing.

nōlō, I do not wish, am unwilling.
mālō, I wish more, prefer, would rather.

181. The infinitive with subject accusative is used with verbs and expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.

Remember, however, that if the dependent clause is interrogative, it becomes an indirect question and takes its verb in the subjunctive:

Nesciō, inquit, quae causa odiī fuerit; fuisse odium intellegō, I do not know, said he, what was the cause of the hatred; but I do know that there was hatred.

182. The most common verbs and expressions of saying, thinking, etc., are: **dīcō, cōnfīrmō, fateor, negō, nūntiō, ostendō, probō, polliceor, prōmittō, spērō, iubeō, vetō, aliquem certiōrem faciō, certior fīō, fāma est, audiō, cernō, videō, sentiō, intellegō, cōgnōscō, sciō, nesciō, putō, dūcō, cōgitō, crēdō, arbitror, exīstimō**, etc.

183. An infinitive that is dependent has no time of its own:

1. The present shows that the action is going on at the time of the principal verb:

Dīcit eōs legere, he says that they are now reading.
Dīxit eōs legere, he said that they were then reading.

2. The perfect shows that the action was prior to that of the principal verb:

Dīcit eōs lēgisse, he says that they read, have read, have been reading.
Dīxit eōs lēgisse, he said that they read, had read, had been reading.

3. The future shows that the action will take place after that of the principal verb:

Dīcit eōs lēctūrōs esse, he says that they will read, will be reading, are about to read.

Dīxit eōs lēctūrōs esse, he said that they would read, would be reading, were about to read.

184. In vivid description, where person, number, and tense are all ignored, the present infinitive with a subject in the nominative may take the place of the imperfect or perfect indicative:

Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī, from day to day the Haedui kept putting him off.

185. Remember that the future infinitive is commonly used with verbs of hoping and promising:

Spērant sē maximum frūctum esse captūrōs, they hope to gain the greatest advantage.

Pollicentur sē itūrōs esse, they promise to go.

186. With verbs of teaching, the person may be expressed by the accusative, and the thing taught, by the infinitive:

Servus puerōs scrībere docuit, a slave taught the children to write.

187. When a verb has no supine stem, the missing forms of the infinitive may be supplied by **fore ut, futūrum esse ut, futūrum fuisse ut,** with the subjunctive.

188. If a sentence containing both subject and object with an infinitive is ambiguous, change the construction by making the infinitive passive:

They say that the Gauls conquered the Germans, **dīcunt ā Gallīs Germānōs victōs esse.**

189. In expressing an English infinitive in Latin, make the thought definite and precise:

Prīmus vēnit, he was the first to come.

Laetus veniam, I shall be glad to come.

Cūrā ut veniās, be sure to come.

Nihil mihi longius vidētur dum veniam, I am impatient to come.

Spērō mē posse venīre, I hope to be able to come.

Ut paucīs conclūdam, to sum up in a few words, to make a long story short.

Mīror cum videō, I am surprised to see.

190. In translating an English sentence of this type, 'It is dangerous for us to go,' remember that the word 'for' belongs to the infinitive and has no effect on the case of the noun or pronoun: **perīculōsum est nōs īre.**

Exercise 32

1. The divisions of the Roman legion seem to have been different at different times.

2. Those most frequently mentioned are cohorts and turmae.

3. The standards of the different divisions seem to have had certain letters inscribed on them.

4. To lose the standard was considered disgraceful, or rather, a crime. (179.)

5. To animate the soldiers the standards were sometimes thrown into the midst of the enemy.

6. A general was accustomed to call his troops 'soldiers.' (180.)

7. A general before a battle usually made a short speech to his troops, who showed their approval by shouts. (180; 16.)

8. Silence on their part was a mark of timidity. (190; 33.)

9. After the speech all the trumpets sounded, which was the signal for marching. (74; 140.)

10. Some of the soldiers were calling out 'to arms'; others pulling up the standards which stood fixed in the ground; the general riding round the ranks and again exhorting the soldiers to be brave; the soldiers with a great shout rushing forward to the attack. (184.)

SUGGESTIONS

4. Observe that the English infinitive *to lose* is used as a noun; in sentence 5 the English infinitive *to animate* expresses purpose. This must be shown in Latin (**ad mīlitēs incitandōs pugnandī cupiditāte**).

8. *For them to be silent or not to shout was* (a mark) *of fear.*

10. Notice the historical infinitives.

Remember that the general exhorted the soldiers for a purpose — that they might be brave.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

191. The following will show the difference between a gerund and a gerundive:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Verbal noun	Verbal adjective
Neuter	Mas., fem., neut.
Singular	Sing., plural
Nom. and voc., wanting	Used in all cases
Active	Passive
May have an object	Agrees with what seems to be its object

192. The gerundive is an adjective except when it is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive periphrastic conjugation which expresses necessity or obligation.

193. A present infinitive may supply the lacking nominative of the gerund.

The genitive, accusative, and ablative are the cases of the gerund and the gerundive in most common use.

194. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may *precede* the noun **causā**, *for the sake, for the purpose:*

Aggerem petendī causā prōcesserant,
Aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, } they had gone for the purpose of getting material for the mound.

195. Genitive gerunds and gerundives may be used with nouns and adjectives:

modus operandī, mode of working.
cupidus equitandī, fond of riding.
spatium pīla coniciendī,
spatium pīlōrum coniciendōrum, } room or time for throwing javelins.

196. Do not forget that with the genitives **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**, the gerundive ending in **ī** is to be used regardless of the gender and number of the antecedent:

Suī mūniendī causā, for the purpose of strengthening himself (his position).

Suī cōnservandī causā, for the sake of saving themselves.

197. The accusative of gerunds is used with prepositions, of which **ad** is most often found:

Ad videndum vēnērunt, they came to see.

In a sentence of this kind use the gerundive, not the gerund, when an object is expressed:

Ad videndam urbem vēnērunt, they came to see the city.

198. Remember that with verbs of caring, giving, sending, undertaking, and the like, a gerundive agreeing with the object expresses purpose; the most common of these verbs are **cūrō, dō, locō, trādō, attribuō, suscipiō:**

Caesar pontem faciendum cūrat, Caesar gives orders for the building of a bridge. (Caesar has a bridge built.)

Iīs pecūniam habendam dedit, he gave them the money to keep.

199. The ablative of the gerund is used to express time, cause, means, etc. When there is no object the ablative of the gerund may be used with **ab, dē, ex, in.** If there is an object, use the gerundive, instead of the gerund, when there is a preposition:

Nōs nōn pugnandō sed tacendō superant, they conquer us not by fighting but by holding their tongues.

In quaerendō reperiēbat, he kept finding out on inquiry.

Cōnstitit nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret, he halted lest he might lose time in looking for his own standards.

200. 'Without saying,' 'without working,' and similar expressions of common use in English may be expressed in Latin in various ways, but *not* by the preposition **sine** with an ablative of the gerund:

Tū quidem nōn abībis nisi id fēceris, of course you will not go away without doing that.

Abiit neque id fēcit, he went away without doing that.

Nōn rogātus vēnit, he came without being asked.

SUPINES

201. Supines are verbal nouns ending in **um** and **ū**. The supine in **um** is called the accusative or former supine, that in **ū** the ablative or latter supine.

202. The supine in **um** is used with a verb of motion to express purpose.

The most common verbs of motion are those meaning *come, go, send, lead, bring, carry* (**veniō, eō, mittō, dūcō, ferō, portō**).

203. Among the supines in **um** of frequent use are: **rogātum**, *to ask;* **petītum**, *to beg, seek;* **postulātum**, *to demand;* **questum**, *to complain;* **salūtātum**, *to pay one's respects;* **grātulātum**, *to congratulate;* **frūmentātum**, *to forage;* **dēfēnsum**, *to defend;* **servītum**, *to serve;* **vēnātum**, *to hunt:*

Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītōs canēs, it is folly to lead unwilling dogs to hunt.

204. An accusative supine with an object is more rarely used than an accusative gerundive to express purpose:

Dīxit eōs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse, he said that they had come to fight against him.

205. The supine in **ū** is used with an adjective as an ablative of specification.

The supines in **ū** that are of frequent use are: **dictū**, *to say;* **factū**, *to do;* **vīsū**, *to see;* **audītū**, *to hear;* and **cōgnitū**, *to know.* These are regularly used with **facilis**, *easy;* **difficilis**, *difficult;* **dignus**, *worthy;* **iūcundus**, *pleasant;* **optimus**, *best;* **mīrābilis**, *wonderful;* **miserābilis**, *pitiable;* **fās**, *right;* **nefās**, *wrong, wicked.*

facile factū, easy to do.
dignus cōgnitū, worthy to know.
iūcundum audītū, pleasant to hear.
optimum factū, best to do.
mīrābile dictū, wonderful to tell.
miserābile vīsū, pitiable to see.
Sī hoc fās est dictū, if this is right to say.
Nefās est dictū, it is wicked to say.

Exercise 33

1. Once upon a time twelve tribes of Greece united for the purpose of worshiping Apollo. (194.)

2. They then had a temple built in his honor. (198; 27; 29.)

3. Deputies used to come from all these tribes every six months. (156.)

4. From these, at first, there were chosen certain ones to prepare laws (not an easy thing to do) for governing the temple. (205; 197.)

5. Oracles, pretended answers of Apollo, were given to those who came to consult him. (202.)

6. There were in different places twenty-two oracles of Apollo, but a much smaller number of those of Jupiter. (89.)

7. The name 'oracle' was given both to the place in which the god was said to appear and to the answer given.

8. By far the most renowned oracles were those of Jupiter and Apollo; the former at Dodona, a city of Epirus, and the latter at Delphi, a city of Phocis. (94; 123; 39; 77.)

Exercise 34

1. The oracle of Apollo at Delphi gained a world-wide celebrity.

2. Desirous of gaining information, especially in time

of danger, monarchs of Asia and Romans of all classes used to go there to inquire what was best for them to do. (195; 202; 205.)

3. At Dodona the priests used to go to the forest to listen to the voice of Jupiter in the rustling leaves of the sacred oak. (39; 202.)

4. At Delphi, the voice of Apollo, if this is the right thing to say, came from a deep fissure in the ground. (205.)

5. In early times the priests did nothing that should be censured.

6. Later, inquirers could get such answers as they wished by bribing the priests, a thing not at all difficult to do. (55; 205.)

7. When the priests thought it best they gave no answer at all, and therefore many returned home without receiving advice. (182; 205; 16; 58; 200.)

8. Although this is so, they, strange to say, returned again and again to consult the oracle, but finally they began to lose confidence in it. (205; 197; 16.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *To gain a world-wide celebrity* is to be very renowned throughout the world, hence one way to express this thought is **nōtissimum esse per terrārum orbem.**

2. *To gain information* is to learn things about, **cōgnōscere dē.**

Notice the indirect question in 2, and remember to express it by the subjunctive.

Remember that the Latin imperfect tense may be used to express not only the English auxiliary *was* and a past tense, but quite often an additional verb or adverb.

Legēbat, *he was reading, he read, he used to read, he kept reading, he began to read, he often read, he was constantly reading, he continued to read, he was still reading*, etc.

4. A fissure is a narrow and open place.

5. *Nothing not to be praised* (gerundive) *the priests did.*

6. (Those) *who inquired could get those answers which they wished, after they had bribed the priests.*

8. *Although this is so:* **quae cum ita sint.**

FINAL SENTENCES

206. In final sentences or purpose clauses, the tense to be used is the present or the imperfect; the mode, the subjunctive; the most common introductory words, **ut** or **utī** (affirmative), **nē** (negative), or a relative pronoun:

Monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet, he warns him to avoid all suspicions in the future.

Iīs persuāsit nē īrent, he persuaded them not to go.

207. **Ut nōn** may be used in a purpose clause when a word and not a clause is to be made negative:

Vēnērunt ut in hostēs nōn in sociōs impetum facerent, they came to attack the enemy, not their allies.

208. **Nēve** or **neu** is used to continue **nē**:

Caesar litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent, Caesar sent written orders for them not to help them with grain or anything else.

209. Use **quō**, not **ut**, as a rule, in final sentences if there is a comparative in the clause.

Mīlitēs sīgna īnferre iussit quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent, he ordered the soldiers to advance so that they could use their swords more easily.

Exercise 35

1. After the death of Darius, Xerxes, who had succeeded him, collected an immense army for the purpose of invading Greece. (74; 206.)

2. Everywhere from Asia Minor to the river Indus he levied troops.

3. He had two bridges of boats made, that he might more easily transport these troops across the Hellespont. (198; 209.)

4. He appointed autumn (as) the time for meeting in a town of Cappadocia. (206.)

5. He made himself commander-in-chief of these troops and led them in person to the city Sardis for the winter. (61; 128; 197.)

6. When this army was about to start from Sardis, intelligence came that the bridges across the Hellespont had been destroyed by a violent tempest. (16; 65; 182.)

7. Tradition says that Xerxes, in great wrath, issued orders for the architects to be put to death and the sea to be bound with fetters and lashed. (182; 206.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. *Everywhere:* **nūsquam nōn.**

4. *Autumn, at which time they might come together into a town of Cappadocia, he appointed.*

5. The phrase *for the winter* suggests purpose, which the Latin must show. (197 or 206.)

6. *It was reported to him that the bridges which across* (in with the ablative) *the Hellespont he had made had been destroyed by a violent tempest.*

7. Arrange as follows:

By report it has been handed down (**fāmā trāditum est**) *that Xerxes, angry, ordered* (**imperō**) *the architects to be killed* (206), *and the sea having been bound with chains to be lashed* (206).

Exercise 36

1. He employed others to build two stronger bridges.
2. Each of these rested upon four hundred vessels, and was about a mile in length, and had high walls so that the horses could not see over them or the cattle be frightened by the water. (155; 208.)
3. In the spring of 480 B.C., the forces already mentioned marched to the Hellespont to meet the fleet which was to wait for them there. (78; 206.)
4. On his arrival Xerxes had a throne of white marble erected on the summit of the mountain. (16; 198; 95.)
5. This he did so that nothing might escape his notice or prevent his seeing both army and fleet. (208.)
6. From this he might overlook both land and sea covered with troops.
7. From this he issued his orders for his vast army to cross into Europe. (206.)

SUGGESTIONS

2. Observe the meaning and use of the verb *rested.* If the bridge rested upon vessels, it must have been placed on them, hence, we say: *Each of these bridges had been placed upon four hundred vessels.*
3. *Already mentioned = which we have already mentioned.*
4. *Xerxes, when he had arrived* or *after he had*

arrived, caused a throne to be erected. The phrase, *of white marble,* describes the throne (ablative of description), or shows that of which it was made (ablative of material).

5. *To escape his notice* is to remain unnoticed, **latēre.** Remember to express *that nothing* by **nē quid** in a purpose clause. *To prevent his seeing:* **impedīre quōminus** with the subjunctive.

6. *Covered* as here used is equivalent to *filled,* **complēre.**

7. *He ordered his army to cross.* (206.)

Exercise 37

1. A historian has given the following account of the army of Xerxes getting ready to cross the Hellespont:

2. Before the passage commenced, sacred myrtle was strewn over the two bridges, and the king himself poured libations upon the sea for the purpose of placating it.

3. At sunrise, prayers were offered to the gods, and then the passage began. (180.)

4. To avoid accidents and delays, the baggage wagons and the beasts of burden crossed by one bridge, the army by the other. (208; 83.)

5. The first to cross was the sacred guard of the Great King, — the Ten Thousand Immortals, — all crowned with garlands. (189.)

6. Preceding the king, the Chariot of the Sun, drawn by eight snow-white horses, moved slowly.

7. Herodotus affirms that for seven days and seven nights the bridges seemed to groan beneath the living tide that Asia was pouring into Europe. (52; 181.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *In regard to* (**dē**) *the army of Xerxes preparing to cross the Hellespont, these things have been written.*

2. *Before they began to cross the bridges, they scattered sacred myrtle over* (**per**) *them, and,* etc.

3. *At sunrise* is at 'first light' (**prīma lūce**). (95.)

Prayers were offered = having called upon their gods in prayer.

The passage began = they began to cross the bridges.

4. It will be necessary to show by the Latin that the wagons did not cross of their own accord:

So that nothing (**nē quid**) *might harm them or delay them, they led the beasts of burden, etc., across one bridge, the army across the other.* (49.)

6. *Before the king, the Chariot, etc., was slowly led across the bridge.*

7. One of the most common metaphors used by the Romans appears in this sentence. The words *tide* and *pouring* suggest the rushing of water. Here it is the tide of living beings rushing or pouring into Europe.

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

210. Consecutive or result clauses take their verbs in the subjunctive; the present and the imperfect are the tenses of most frequent use; the most common introductory words, **ut** or **utī** (affirmative), **ut nōn** (negative):

Dīxērunt futūrum esse utī omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent, they said that the result would be that all the Germans would cross the Rhine.

Multīs vulneribus cōnfectus ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, exhausted by many wounds so that he could not stand any longer.

211. In a result clause dependent upon a past tense, use the present tense if the act is continued into the present:

Ita sē gessit ut tibi decorī sit, he has so conducted himself that he is now a credit to you.

212. In a result clause dependent upon a past tense, use the perfect subjunctive if the act is completed:

Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit, so short was the time that it was insufficient for them to put on their helmets.

213. If the verb upon which a result clause depends suggests the result, use the imperfect tense for a completed act:

Accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened to be full moon.

Quō factum est ut ab urbe discēderent, the result of this was that they left the city.

214. Such words as **sīc** and **ita**, *so*, suggest result clauses; remember, however, that these words may precede purpose clauses also:

Sunt ita multī ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit, there are so many that the prison cannot hold them.

Ita mē gessī nē tibi pudōrī essem, I conducted myself so that I might not be a disgrace to you.

Exercise 38

1. When the consul, Minucius, was warring against the Aequians, they shut him up in a valley and guarded it so that he could not get out. (214.)

2. When news of this was brought to Rome, the senate said, "What prevents our making Lucius Quintius Cincinnatus dictator? He is the only man who can help us." (16; 61; 49.)

3. Cincinnatus happened to be at work plowing when the messenger from Rome arrived. (213.)

4. So great was the danger that there was not time to raise a large army.

5. With such an army as he could raise quickly, he marched against the Aequians.

6. Around these he ordered his men to dig a ditch, so that no one of them could escape. (206; 214; 180.)

7. So great was the fear (on the part) of the Aequians that they surrendered at once. (213.)

8. He ordered his (soldiers) to treat them kindly. (206.)

9. After Minucius had been liberated, Cincinnatus gave over the army to him, and we have no doubt that he was glad to go back to his home. (189.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Decide whether you wish to make prominent the fact that it was a consul whom the Aequians shut up in a valley, or who the consul was. If the former, show this by placing **cōnsul** before the name; if the latter, the name will come first.

2. *What prevents our making:* **quid obstat quōminus** with the subjunctive — *he alone can help us.*

4. *To raise an army* is 'to collect or bring together an army,' **cōgere exercitum.**

6. Observe that *so that no one* introduces a purpose clause, — hence **nē quis** must be used.

9. *To Minucius liberated Cincinnatus gave over the army.* Do not forget that **dubitō**, *doubt*, usually takes **quīn**, *that*, with the subjunctive. Notice that the tense of *was* must be perfect, not imperfect, in this sentence.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

215. In a conditional sentence there are two clauses, the condition or protasis, and the conclusion or apodosis.

Remember that the conclusion is the principal clause, and the condition the dependent clause.

Among the most common introductory words are **sī**, *if;* **nisi**, *if not, unless;* **sī nōn**, *if not;* **sī minus**, *if not;* **sīn**, *but if.*

216. Often the difference between **nisi** and **sī nōn** is not essential.

Nisi, however, may be used to make a clause negative; **sī nōn**, to make a word negative:

Nūntium ad eum mittit nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse, he sends word that unless relief be sent to him, he will be unable to hold out longer.

Quod sī nōn possumus facere, moriāmur, if we cannot do this, let us die.

217. **Sī minus** is often used when the verb is to be supplied from the context:

Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs; si minus, quam plūrimōs, lead out with you all your associates; if not, as many as possible. (94.)

218. **Sīn**, *but if*, is used to introduce a second condition that expresses something in opposition to the first condition:

Sīn autem servīre meae glōriae māvīs cōnfer tē ad Manlium, but if you prefer to add to my glory, betake yourself to Manlius.

219. When a condition is stated as a fact, use the indicative mode:

Sī hoc dīcis, vehementer errās, if you say this, you are greatly mistaken.

220. Future Condition More Real or Vivid.

1. In this, both condition and conclusion may be expressed by the future indicative:

Sī accelerāre volent, cōnsequentur, if they are willing to hurry, they will overtake him.

2. The condition may be expressed by the future perfect indicative; the conclusion by the future indicative:

Sī castra mūnīrī iusserit, mīlitēs pārēbunt, if he orders the camp to be fortified, the soldiers will obey (orders).

3. Both condition and conclusion may be expressed by the future perfect indicative:

Quōs sī meus cōnsulātus sustulerit, multa saecula prōpāgārit reī pūblicae, if my consulship removes these, it will add ages to the state (it will prolong the state for ages).

4. The condition may be introduced by a relative pronoun:

Quī perterritī eritis, domōs vestrās dīmittam, if any of you are afraid, I shall send you to your homes.

5. The condition may be expressed by a participle:

Quibus superātīs, in nostrōs fīnēs veniet, if these are conquered, he will come into our territory.

6. The conclusion may be expressed by an imperative:

Etiam sī Catilīna perierit, scītōte reliquōs coniūrātōs in rē pūblicā futūrōs esse, even if Catiline does perish, rest assured that the rest of the conspirators will remain in the city.

7. The conclusion may be expressed by Ō with the accusative, and the condition by the future perfect indicative:

Hunc sī secūtī erunt suī comitēs, Ō nōs beātōs! if his associates follow him, happy shall we be!

221. Future Condition Less Real or Vivid.

In this, use the present subjunctive in both condition and conclusion:

Haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat? if your country should say this to you, ought she not to obtain her request?

222. Present Contrary to Fact Condition.

In a condition of this kind, we suppose something that is not true now. In this, use the imperfect subjunctive in both condition and conclusion:

Sī tē timērēmus, ita dīcerēmus, if we were afraid of you, we should say so.

223. Past Contrary to Fact Condition.

Here we suppose something that was not true at some past time. In this, as a rule, use the pluperfect subjunctive in both condition and conclusion:

Sī hoc dīxissem, senātus mihi vim et manūs intulisset, if I had said this, the senate would have laid violent hands on me.

224. A sentence may contain a past contrary to fact condition and a present contrary to fact conclusion:

Sī hoc dīxissem, quid dīcerēs? if I had said this, what would you say?

225. The imperfect or perfect indicative of the active periphrastic conjugation may be used instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the conclusion of a contrary to fact condition:

Quid tandem, incēnsīs tabernīs, futūrum fuit? what, pray, would have been the result if the shops had been burned?

226. Remember that in the conclusion of a contrary to fact condition a past tense of the indicative may suggest an omission of what might have been or might have happened:

Pōns iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi ūnus vir fuisset, the bridge almost gave the enemy a right of way (and would have done so), had it not been for one man.

227. Observe that when **possum**, *I am able, I can*, **dēbeō**, *I ought*, **oportet**, *it is necessary*, or the passive periphrastic conjugation is used in the conclusion of a contrary to fact condition, the form, as a rule, is imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative:

Sī in hāc urbe esset, is erat mittendus, if he were in this city now, he would be the one to be sent.

228. Dependent Contrary to Fact Conditions.

If a present contrary to fact condition is made to depend upon a verb that requires the subjunctive, do not make any change in either the condition or conclusion:

Sī ita putārēs, dīcerēs, if you thought so, you would say so.

Nōn dubitāmus quīn sī ita putārēs, dīcerēs, we do not doubt that if you thought so, you would say so.

229. If a past condition contrary to fact depends upon a verb that requires the subjunctive, express the conclusion by the perfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation; do not make any change in the condition:

Nōn dubitāmus quīn, sī ita putāvissēs, dictūrus fueris, we do not doubt that if you had thought so, you would have said so.

Exercise 39

1. Find out, if you can, something about oracles; if you cannot do this yourself, question somebody. (127; 152.)

2. If it is possible for you to do so, go to both Delphi and Dodona; if not, go to Delphi, the most famous of oracles. (58.)

3. Should you decide to go to this place, you would hear it said that in early times, Delphi was called Pytho; Apollo, the Pythius; and his priestess, Pythia. (221; 181; 182.)

4. If you inquire, you will find out that Pythia uttered the oracles from the tripod on which she sat. (220, 2; 182.)

5. Whoever is willing to make further inquiries, will learn that the sounds which she made could not be understood by those who had consulted the oracle. (220, 4; 182; 180.)

6. There were priests to give the responses. (206.)

7. The questioner went away happy if the responses were favorable; but if unfavorable, he returned home greatly disappointed. (218.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. The conclusion, as is frequently the case, may be expressed by the imperative (220, 6); the condition in the first part is positive; the same condition appears in the

second part of the sentence; here, however, it is negative. Show this by using **sī nōn**. *To question somebody* is 'to inquire something from somebody.'

2. The condition is of the same kind as that in sentence 1; in this, however, it will be more courteous to use the future indicative instead of the imperative, since the word *go* as here used cannot be considered a command. The verb of the condition in the second part is not expressed. Use **sī mĭnus** to translate *if not*. (217.)

5. *To make further inquiries* is to inquire or to ask more (things).

7. A *questioner* is (one) who inquires. In this sentence we find two conditions, the second of which opposes the first; express *but if* by **sīn**.

Exercise 40

1. The prophetess called Pythia was in early times a young girl of noble birth; afterwards, one chosen (as) Pythia was a woman over fifty, clad in the dress of a girl.

2. At first there was only one Pythia; later, there were two or three. Had there not been, it would not have been possible to give responses to all who came to consult the oracle. (227; 16.)

3. If the Pythias had not given their answers to the priests alone, the latter would not have had such power. (216; 223.)

4. At Rome there were no oracles. Why would the Romans have gone to Delphi to consult the oracle, if there had been? (223.)

5. We do not doubt that, if there had been oracles in Rome, the Romans would not have gone either to Magna Graecia or to Delphi for advice. (229.)

6. We do not doubt that if there were oracles nowadays, many would consult them; for it would be tedious to enumerate those who in our time try to read the future. (228.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. A person *over fifty* is one 'born more than fifty years.' (92.) *Clad in the dress of a girl* is 'wearing (**gerēns**) the dress (**habitum**) of a virgin.'

2. Change the conclusion to the impersonal form of the passive voice. Remember that there are many ways of expressing purpose, but do not use the infinitive. (194; 197; 202; 206.)

3. *To have such power:* **tantum valēre, tantum posse.** (55.)

5. Notice the idea of purpose suggested by the noun *advice*. *Not either . . . or:* **neque . . . neque.**

6. *It would be tedious:* **longum est.**

Exercise 41

1. If any one thinks that Catiline is not guilty, he is greatly mistaken.

2. What would you say, Caesar, if you knew that he had an army in this city at this very time? (222; 183; 75; 78.)

3. If you listen, I will give you the names of those among us who, of course not in name, but in fact, belong to that army; if you do not, I fear that they will prove your ruin. (220; 33; 49.)

4. What would you have thought if the conspirators had been killed, (while) trying to burn the very roof over your head? (223.)

5. They almost succeeded (and would have done so) had it not been for the ambassadors of the Allobroges,

who exposed the whole matter to their patron, Q. Fabius Sanga, and asked his advice about it. (226.)

6. It was the duty of a patron to protect his clients. (33; 179; 49.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. Since the condition is expressed as a fact, show this by using the indicative in both clauses. *He is greatly mistaken:* **vehementer errat.**

3. Observe that the condition in the first part is positive, and that the same condition is in the second part negative. Express *if not* by **sī nōn** or **sī minus**. After **vereor**, *I fear*, express *that* by **nē**. Use the present subjunctive to express *will be*.

4. *The roof over your head = your roof.*

5. Note carefully both the meaning and use of a word. In this sentence, the word *succeeded* evidently means 'burned the roof' or 'accomplished the thing.' *Had it not been for the ambassadors*, etc., should be expressed as if it read *Unless the ambassadors had exposed*, etc. *To ask his advice* is 'to consult him.'

Exercise 42

1. This being the case, I do not doubt that even if you had opposed capital punishment you would have been glad to deprive these scoundrels of life in order to save your country. (229; 189; 64; 206.)

2. If you, Caesar, had been consul, would *you* have recommended the pardon of a conspirator? (223; 157; 43; 206.)

3. Whoever favors imprisonment for life is, in my opinion, unjust to those states to which he would have these dangerous men sent.

4. If the conspirators live until daylight, remember that the lives of us all will be in danger. (220, 6; 104; 183, 3.)

5. Think about all your friends; if not all, those whom Catiline hates. (217.)

6. You will avoid even the usual delays if you act sensibly. (220; 96.)

7. Rest assured that no one will blame you if you say what you think. (175; 183, 3; 215.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *This being the case:* **quae cum ita sint.**

The expression *capital punishment* suggests death as the fine imposed for some crime. This may be shown in Latin by **morte multāre,** *to fine by death. To recommend a pardon* is to advise that pardon be granted to one.

3. *To favor imprisonment for life* is 'to say that they ought to be in chains everlasting.'

Observe that by placing **sempiternīs,** *everlasting*, after **vinculīs,** we show how hopeless the case is.

In English, as well as in Latin, a change of meaning may arise from a change in the order of words.

This is shown in sentence 3 in the use of the words *would*, *have*, and *sent*. Remember that *would* is not in this case an auxiliary, but a principal verb; that *have* is not to be expressed, and that *sent* suggests a future, not a completed action.

He would have these dangerous men sent is equivalent to *He wishes these dangerous men to be sent.*

4. *Until daylight* is 'to the light' or 'to the rising sun.' Use **vīta,** *life*, in the singular, not plural.

7. Keep in mind the fact that both relative clauses and indirect questions may begin with the word *what.*

Decide whether this sentence does or does not mean, 'say that which you think,' 'give your own opinion.'

This is evidently the meaning here, hence it is a relative clause stating a *fact*, and as such requires its verb in the indicative.

Exercise 43

1. If you believe what I have said, you will, undoubtedly, consider your personal safety; but if you doubt it, you will not, I presume, oppose our trying to save our country. (220.)

2. How fortunate we shall all be if the case is decided as soon as possible! (220, 7.)

3. What will Catiline care about us Romans if he can reign in Rome, that is, in the new city which he hopes to build where Rome now stands? (220; 189.)

4. Had it not been for his practical experience, the rest of the conspirators could not have accomplished so much. (223; 96; 95.)

5. If Catiline were here now, he would be the one to be put to death first. (227.)

6. Let Cethegus, Lentulus, Gabinius, Statilius, and Ceparius, who are under arrest, be led to the prison at once, provided Roman citizens may then be safe.

SUGGESTIONS

1. The word *what* is equivalent to *those things which;* hence it introduces a relative clause which states a fact. *To consider your personal safety* is 'to consult your own interest' (44), or 'to think about yourself' (**dē tē cōgitāre**). *I presume*, **crēdō, opīnor**, when used parenthetically, does not affect the construction.

3. *What will Catiline care* means 'what (thought) will he have (**cōgitāre**) about (**dē**) us?' Decide whether the word *where* as used in 3 is a relative or an interrogative.

If it means 'in the places, in which places' (137), it is a relative and as such requires the indicative to state a fact.

6. Do not allow the word *under* to mislead you. Those who are 'under arrest' are 'held arrested.' *Roman citizens*, **cīvēs Rōmānī**, not **Rōmānī cīvēs.**

Observe the use of the jussive subjunctive in *Let Cethegus, Lentulus, etc., be led.*

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

230. The subjunctive is used in expressions of wishing, which are often introduced by **utinam**, *would that.*

To make a wish negative **nē** is commonly used:

Utinam nē veniant, I wish they would not come! Would that they would not come!

231. The present subjunctive is used to express a wish that may be fulfilled:

Sērus in caelum redeās! may you live long! may your return to heaven be long deferred!

232. A wish that seems hopeless in the present or near future is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive:

Utinam adforet (old form of **adesset**) **Aenēās**! would that Aeneas were here now!

233. The perfect subjunctive may refer to past action that is now completed:

Utinam vēnerint, I do hope that they have come.

234. A wish unfulfilled in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive:

Utinam ille omnēs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset! would that he had led all his forces with him!

235. **Velim** and **vellem** with their compounds, **nōlim, nōllem, mālim, māllem,** may be used with a subjunctive to express a wish:

Velim vērum sit, I hope it is true.

Vellem vērum fuisset, I wish it had been true.

Nōllem vēnissent, I wish they had not come.

Māllem sēcum mīlitēs ēdūxisset! I wish he had led his soldiers with him!

CLAUSES

Dependent Clauses

236. In English we do not make a change in the mode of a verb *because* it is used in a dependent clause; in Latin, however, we must observe carefully that upon which the clause depends. Although a verb is not in the indicative or subjunctive *because* it is used with certain conjunctions, these conjunctions in many cases suggest the mode to be used.

Temporal Clauses

237. The most common introductory words for temporal clauses are: **cum,** *when;* **ubi,** *when;* **ut,** *when, since;* **ut prīmum,** *as soon as;* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as;* **simul ac** or **atque,** *as soon as;* **antequam,** *before;* **priusquam,** *before;* **postquam,** *after;* **posteāquam,** *after;* **dum,** *while, as long as, until;* **dōnec,** *until, while;* **quoad,** *until, while.*

The following examples will show that temporal clauses may take the indicative or subjunctive:

238. **Cum,** *when:*

Cum Germānīs contendunt cum suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, they fight with the Germans when they keep them from their territory.

Cum esset in citeriōre Galliā ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, being in hither Gaul, rumors reached him.

Quem cum ex urbe pellēbam hoc prōvidēbam animō, at the time that I was trying to force him from Rome I foresaw this.

Ille eō tempore pāruit cum pārēre senātuī necesse erat; vōs tunc pāruistis cum pāruit nēmō quī nōluit, he obeyed orders at a time when one had to obey the senate; you obeyed when no one who did not wish to do so obeyed.

239. **Ubi,** *when:*

Quod ubi resciit, reliquōs in dēditiōnem accēpit, when Caesar found this out, he allowed the rest to surrender.

240. **Ut,** *when, as soon as:*

Id ut audīvit Corcȳram dēmigrāvit, as soon as he heard it, he went to Corcyra.

241. **Ut prīmum,** *as soon as:*

Ut prīmum lūx data est quaerere cōnstituit, he decided to inquire as soon as day dawned.

242. **Cum prīmum,** *as soon as:*

Caesar cum prīmum potuit, ad exercitum contendit, Caesar hastened to his army as soon as he could do so.

Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit, as soon as there began to be plenty of fodder he came to the army himself.

243. **Simul ac** or **atque,** *as soon as:*

Simul ac persēnsit tālibus aggreditur Venerem Sāturnia dictīs, as soon as Saturn's daughter (Juno) realized this, she addressed Venus with such words as these.

Simul atque īre in exilium iussus est, pāruit, as soon as he was ordered to go into exile, he obeyed.

244. **Antequam, ante . . . quam,** *before:*

Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam, before returning to the subject I shall speak briefly of myself.

Antequam ad oppidum pervēnērunt Caesarī sē dēdidērunt, before reaching the town they surrendered to Caesar.

Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus, we see the lightning before we hear the sound.

245. **Priusquam, priŭs . . . quam,** *sooner than, before:*

Priusquam respondeō (responderō) dē cēterīs rēbus dīcam, before I answer I shall speak about the other matters.

Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt, and they did not stop before they reached the Rhine.

Priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, before the enemy recovered from fright he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.

246. **Postquam, post . . . quam,** *after:*

Postquam audiērunt mūrōs īnstruī lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, after they had heard that the walls were being built they sent ambassadors to Athens.

Observe the use of **postquam** with the pluperfect indicative to express a definite time in a sentence of the following type:

Hannibal rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō tertiō et vīcēsimō, Hannibal was elected to the highest magistracy the twenty-third year after he was commander-in-chief of the army.

247. **Posteāquam,** *after:*

Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, after he reached the Alps he killed those who tried to prevent his crossing.

248. **Dum**, *while:*

Dum, *while*, usually has the present indicative after all tenses.

Hominēs dum docent, discunt, men learn while they are teaching.

Dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī tēla in nostrōs cōicere, while this was going on it was reported to Caesar that the horsemen of Ariovistus were hurling javelins at our men.

249. **Dum**, *as long as:*

In freta dum fluviī current, semper honōs nōmenque tuum manēbunt, as long as rivers flow into the ocean ever will thy name be honored.

250. **Dum**, *until:*

Nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent, he decided not to wait until the Helvetians reached the land of the Santones.

251. **Dōnec**, *until, as long as:*

Dōnec rediit silentium fuit, there was silence until he returned.

Dōnec eris fēlīx multōs numerābis amīcōs, as long as you are fortunate you will have many friends.

Causal Causes

252. Among the most common introductory words for causal clauses are **quod, quia, quoniam**, which are usually found with the indicative when the cause is a fact, **cum** and the relative **quī**, which are followed by the subjunctive.

253. **Quod**, *because:*

Victōria Caesarī voluptātem attulit, quod suum hospitem sibi restitūtum vidēbat, the victory gave Caesar pleasure because he saw that his guest had been restored to him.

254. **Quod**, *because:*

Hanc reperiēbat causam quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, he ascertained this reason, because it was the custom among the Germans.

Notice that **quod . . . esset** is not given on the writer's authority; hence the subjunctive.

255. **Quia**, *because:*

Nōn quia difficilia sunt nōn audēmus, sed quia nōn audēmus difficilia, it is not because things are hard to do that we dare not try them, but because we dare not try them, they seem hard.

256. **Quoniam**, *because, now that, since:*

Quoniam dē genere bellī dīxī, nunc dē magnitūdine pauca dīcam, now that I have spoken of the character of the war I shall speak briefly of its importance.

257. **Cum**, *since, because:*

Haeduī, cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, since the Haedui could not defend themselves they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

258. **Quī**, relative pronoun, *since I, you*, etc.

The relative **quī** is sometimes equivalent to **cum** (since) and a personal or a demonstrative pronoun:

Ō fortūnāte, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris, fortunate man, since you found Homer as the herald of your brave deeds.

Concessive Clauses

259. In concessive clauses the common introductory words are **cum, quamquam, etsī, quī** (relative pronoun), **ut, licet.**

260. Cum, *although:*

Cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, although the battle raged from one o'clock until evening, no one could have seen a single one of the enemy desert.

261. Quamquam, *although, and yet:*

Quamquam animus meminisse horret, incipiam, although my mind shudders to recall it, I shall begin.

Quamquam quid loquor? and yet why am I talking? what is the use of my talking?

262. Etsī, *although:*

Etsī male rem gesserat, tamen magnās habēbat cōpiās, although he had managed badly, still he had a large army.

263. Quī, relative pronoun:

Egomet quī leviter Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen complūrēs diēs Athēnīs sum commorātus, although I did not know much about Greek, still I stayed in Athens several days.

264. Ut, *although:*

Ut illa omittam, hoc nōn praetermittendum est, although I may not mention those facts, I must not pass over this.

265. Licet, *although:*

Licet omnēs fremant, ego nōn tacēbō, though all may rave, I shall not hold my tongue.

266. Observe that the perfect subjunctive may be used in a concessive clause:

Fuerint pertinācēs, crīmine parricīdī liceat Pompēiō mortuō carēre, granted that they were stubborn, let Pompey, now that he is dead, be free from the charge of parricide.

267. **Dum, dummodo,** *provided,* introduces a proviso clause:

Magnō mē metū līberābis, dummodo inter mē atque tē mūrus sit, you will free me from great fear, provided there is a wall between you and me.

268. Keep in mind the introductory words in negative final and consecutive sentences.

	FINAL	CONSECUTIVE
That not	**nē**	**ut nōn**
That neither . . . nor	**nē aut . . . aut** / **ut nēve . . . nēve**	**ut neque . . . neque**
That no one	**nē quis**	**ut nēmō**
That no	**nē ūllus**	**ut nūllus**
That never	**nē umquam**	**ut numquam**
That nowhere	**nē ūsquam**	**ut nūsquam**

Circumvēnērunt nē quis eōs cernere posset, they surrounded them so that no one could see them.

Tanta erat tempestās ut nēmō venīret, so great was the storm that no one came.

TENSE

269. It is to be expected that a beginner will find the Latin tenses a source of trouble. Since we, in English, so often use a tense whose form does not show the time, we must decide, before trying to express in Latin an act or event, whether such act or event is present, past, or future, and then show this time by the tense of the verb.

270. Remember that the English present is very often used, when the time is future; the Latin tense, however, must show the time:

When you come, I shall see you, **cum vēneris, tē vidēbō.**

If you come, I shall see you, **sī vēneris, tē vidēbō.**

He will not start until he accomplishes this, **nōn proficīscētur dōnec perfēcerit hoc.**

I shall stay as long as you stay, **ego manēbō dum tū manēbis.**

271. The Latin imperfect may be used to express not only the English progressive form and the regular form of the past tense, but also an additional verb or adverb:

He was reading, He read, He used to read, He kept reading, He began to read, He continued to read, He often read, He was constantly reading, He was still reading, etc., may be expressed in Latin by the imperfect indicative, **legēbat.**

272. Note carefully the meaning shown by the tense in a sentence of this type, *The camp is fortified.*

If this is expressed in Latin by **Castra mūniuntur**, the present tense will show that the work of fortifying is now going on, is not yet completed; if by **Castra mūnita sunt**, the perfect tense will show that the work of fortifying has been completed, and that the camp is, therefore, now fortified.

273. Remember that many verbs which, in English, are used as auxiliaries, are not so rendered in Latin.

The following examples will show some of the translations of the English words *may, can, must, ought, might, would, let*, etc.:

You may go, { **licet eās,** / **licet īre,** / **licet tē īre,** / **licet tibi īre.** } (In these sentences *may* shows permission.)

May you live long, **sērus in caelum redeās.** (Here *may* is used to express a wish.)

One may make a mistake (It is natural to err), **hominis est errāre.**

You may be mistaken (It is possible that you may be deceived), **potest fierī ut fallāris.**

There are many ways in which one may become famous (It is allowed (for one) to become distinguished in many things), **multīs rēbus clārum fierī licet.**

You may say this on my authority (Say this (with) me (as your) authority), **mē auctōre, dīcitō.**

They may have been angry, they may have been stubborn (I grant, they may have been, etc.), **fuerint īrātī, fuerint pertinācēs.**

If I can go, I shall do so (If I shall be able to go, I shall go), **sī poterō īre, ībō.**

You ought to give your opinion.	**tē sententiam dīcere oportet.**
	sententiam dīcās oportet.
	sententiam dīcere dēbēs.
You must give your opinion.	**sententiam dīcere necesse est.**
	necesse est dīcās sententiam.
	tibi sententia dīcenda est.

You might be mistaken (it was possible, etc.), **poterat fierī ut fallerēris.**

They might have been stubborn (granted that they were stubborn), **fuissent pertinācēs.**

What would you have done? **quid factūrī fuistis?**

If I had said this, you would have come, **sī hoc dīxissem, vēnissēs.**

It would be tedious to run through all the names (it is a long list, hence it would be tedious, etc.), **longum est percurrere omnia nōmina.**

Would that he had led all his forces with him! (I wish that, etc.), **utinam ille omnēs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset!**

They told us plainly why they would not go (they said enough (to show) why they were unwilling to go), **cūr nōllent īre satis dīxērunt.**

Read all, if you would know all (wish to know all), **lege tōtum, sī vīs scīre tōtum.**

They would rather read than write (they preferred to read rather than write), **legere quam scrībere mālēbant.**

He would have such changes made as he wished (he was accustomed to change those things which he wished), **ea quae vellet solēbat mutāre.**

Let us go (an exhortation, used only in the present subjunctive, first person plural), **eāmus.**

Let them go (a jussive subjunctive), **eant.**

Let us go (a request for permission to go), **nōbīs īre liceat.**

Let your oar graze the cliffs (permit (that) the oar, etc.), **stringat sine palmula cautēs.**

274. Remember the construction often used with verbs and expressions of fearing. It is natural for one who wishes a thing to happen to fear that it may not happen, and for one who wishes a thing not to happen to fear that it may happen:

Nē eās; **vereor**, don't go (I wish that you would not go), (but) I fear (that you will go).

Vereor nē eās, I fear that you will go.

Ut eās; **vereor**, go (I wish that you would go), (but) I fear (that you will not go).

Vereor ut eās, I fear that you will not go.

From the above we see that the real meaning suggested by **nē** is *that*, and by **ut**, *that not*. Therefore we may say that **nē** means *that* or *lest* after a verb of fearing, and **ut**, *that not*.

275. Keep in mind the constructions which are often used with verbs of preventing, hindering, refusing, etc.:

Prohibitī estis in prōvinciā vestrā pedem pōnere, you were prevented from stepping your foot in your province.

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit, he kept them from speaking when they tried to speak.

Prōpōnit hōs multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant, he says that these are the ones who are keeping many from bringing grain.

Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla cōicerent, the Germans could not be kept from throwing javelins.

Dīxērunt sēsē nōn recūsātūrōs quōminus sub illōrum imperiō essent, they said that they would not refuse to be under their rule.

Impedior nē plūra dīcam, I am hindered from saying more.

Quid obstat nē (quōminus) eās? what prevents your going?

Aetās nōn impedit quōminus agrī colendī studia teneāmus, age does not hinder our retaining an interest in agriculture.

276. Remember the constructions used with verbs and expressions of doubt:

Neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī, (saying) that they ought not to doubt that they intend to take away from the Haedui their liberty.

Nōn esse dubium quīn Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent, (saying) there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most influential people of Gaul.

Neque abest suspīciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit, and suspicion is not wanting that he committed suicide.

Note the use of **dubitō,** *hesitate,* with the infinitive.

Proelium committere nōn dubitāvit, he did not hesitate to begin battle.

WORD LISTS

277. One thing indispensable in writing Latin is a working vocabulary.

Remember, however, that translation is not the mere substitution of words.

Observe carefully, when reading Latin, so that you may be able to use such words and expressions as will be an adequate rendering of the thought you wish to convey.

Make a list of the words with their uses which you meet very often, and without a knowledge of which it is impossible to write Latin.

The following are given as suggestions. Note the words and their uses.

278. THINK

Quis putat esse crīmen fuisse in Āfricā? who thinks that it is a crime to have been in Africa?

Caesar mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, Caesar thought that he ought to hasten.

Eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, he thought that he was returning to his senses.

Nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, he thought that he ought not to wait.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt, they thought that two years would be enough for them to do these things.

Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātum Lacedaemoniōrum adiit, after he thought that they had reached Athens he called on the magistrate of the Spartans.

Omnēs idem sentiunt, all think the same.

Dēsinant prōscrīptiōnēs cōgitāre, let them stop thinking about proscriptions.

Hīc sunt quī dē huius urbis exitiō cōgitent, here there are some who are thinking about the destruction of this city.

Tū ut ūllam fugam meditēre? *you* think of flight? (Impossible.)

Sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, ūnīus ūsūram hōrae istī ad vīvendum nōn dedissem, if I thought this the best thing to do, I should not have allowed that fellow to live one hour.

Sē nōn opīnārī sed scīre dīcit, he says that he does not think, but he knows.

Rōmulus ad deōs trānsīsse crēditus est, Romulus was thought to have crossed over to the gods.

Sī tē parentēs timērent, tū, opīnor, ab eōrum oculīs concēderēs, if your parents feared you, you would, I think, go out of their sight.

279. KNOW

Scīre sē illa esse vēra, (saying) that he knows that those things are true.

Intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, (saying) that he knows with what danger he did it.

Tē nōn sentientem cūstōdient, they will watch you, although you will not know it.

Āgnōscis odium omnium iūstum, you know that the hatred of all is just.

280. SAY

Dīcit montem tenērī ab hostibus, he says that the mountain is held by the enemy.

Negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, he says that he cannot grant to any one the right of way through the province.

(Observe that **negat** = **dīcit nōn**, not **nōn dīcit**.)

Sē suīs cōpiīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat, he says that with his own troops he will gain the kingdoms.

Perfacile factū esse probat, he says (proves) that it is very easy to do.

Cōnfitētur sē in eā parte fuisse, he says (confesses) that he was in that part.

Num īnfitiārī potes tē nōn potuisse id facere? can you deny (not acknowledge) that you could not have done that?

(See Grammar for **āiō**, *I say;* **inquam**, *I say.*)

281. PROMISE

Pollicitus est sē itūrum esse, he promised to go.

Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, he promised to come.

Ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare, ambassadors come to him to promise to give hostages.

Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit, he promised to act as ambassador (he took upon himself the embassy) to the states.

Nōn, si Juppiter spondeat, hōc spērem Ītaliam contingere caelo, not even if Jupiter should promise, could I hope to reach Italy in such weather.

282. ORDER

Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to his presence.

Imperāvit eī ut ea nūntiāret, he ordered him to make the announcement.

Nōn hunc in vincula dūcī imperābis? will you not order him to be put into chains?

Huic mandat ut ad sē quam prīmum revertātur, he orders him to return to him as soon as possible.

Obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrat, he orders an exchange of hostages.

Erat eī praeceptum (43) **ā Caesare nē proelium committeret,** he had been ordered by Caesar not to begin battle.

283. ASK

Hōs ego sententiam rogō, I ask them their opinion.

Tē rogō ut annuum mihi tempus dēs, I ask you to give me a year's time.

Rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat, he asks him to stop pleading (for his brother).

Quaerit ex solō ea, he asks him alone these questions.

Eadem ab aliīs quaerit, he asks others the same questions.

Quaerō dē vōbīs hoc, quid factūrī fuistis? I ask you this question, what would you have done?

Quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum proficīscī, he asked me whether I would start with him.

Interrogās mē num itūrus sim, you ask me whether I intend to go.

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, Caesar kept asking (dunning) the Haedui for grain.

Petit ut ipse statuit, he asks (begs) him to decide the matter himself.

Implōrābant nē sē Rōmānīs trāderent, they asked (implored) them not to give them up to the Romans.

Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret, Ariovistus asked (demanded) Caesar not to lead a single foot soldier to the conference.

PARTICIPLES

284. English words ending in 'ing' are often called present participles, although the form alone may suggest the name. Decide just what the 'ing' words represent before trying to render them in Latin.

285. Remember that a Latin participle has no absolute time. Look for the verb upon which a participle depends, and from this determine the time of the participle:

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibet, he prevents them now when they are trying to speak.

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibēbit, he will prevent them when they will try to speak.

Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit, he prevented them when they were trying to speak.

Reductōs in hostium numerō habet, after they have been brought back, he treats them as enemies.

Reductōs in hostium numerō habēbit, after they will have been brought back, he will treat them as enemies.

Reductōs in hostium numerō habuit, after they had been brought back, he treated them as enemies.

286. English participles that are present in form only may be replaced in Latin by various constructions, among which are coördinate clauses, prepositions, infinitive used substantively, infinitive with subject accusative, historical infinitive, ablative absolute, genitive, clauses introduced by **ut nōn, cum, antequam, priusquam, postquam, quod, quōminus, quīn**, etc.

1. Coördinate Clauses

Abiit neque tē vīdit, he went away without seeing you.

2. Prepositions

Propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem oppidum expugnāre potuit, owing to the width of the ditch and the height of the wall, he could not take the town.

Multō cum perīculō fierī potest, it is a matter involving much danger.

Per meum nōmen rem perfēcērunt, using my name as a pretext, they accomplished their object.

3. Infinitive used Substantively

Vidēre est crēdere, seeing is believing.

4. Infinitive with Subject Accusative

Ubi turrim appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt, when they saw the tower nearing the walls, they sent ambassadors to Caesar.

5. Historical Infinitive (Infinitive of Intimation)

Pars cēdere, aliī īnsequī; neque sīgna neque ōrdinēs servāre; nihil imperiō agī; fors omnia regere, (there they were) some giving way, others pressing on; keeping neither standards nor ranks; nothing being done according to military rule; chance directing everything.

6. Ablative Absolute

Amīcō nōn vīsō, reversus est, he returned without seeing his friend.

7. Genitive

Eius partis perīculum timēbātur, the danger arising from that quarter was feared.

8. Clause with Ut Nōn

Numquam eōs videt ut nōn auxilium roget, he never sees them without asking for help.

9. Clause with Cum

Imperātor, cum intellēxisset hostēs castra mōvisse, subsequēbātur, learning that the enemy had broken camp, the general followed in close pursuit.

10. Clause with Antequam

Antequam vēnērunt, nūntiāvērunt, before coming, they sent word.

11. Clause with Priusquam

Priusquam vēnerō, nūntiābō, before coming, I shall send you word.

12. Clause with Postquam

Ad Alpēs postquam pervēnit, exercitum trādūxit, after reaching the Alps, he led his army across.

13. Clause with Quod

Ex eō, quod vēnistī, tē prō amīcō habēbunt, from your coming, they will look upon you as a friend.

14. Clause with Quōminus

Nōn dēterrent quōminus eās, they cannot prevent your going.

15. Clause with Quīn

Facere nōn possum quīn putem haec esse vēra, I cannot help thinking that this is true.

287. The following examples will show some of the Latin forms of expression for English participles whose form is past:

Quod suprā dēmōnstrāvimus est vērum, the aforesaid or above-mentioned is true.

Cum perīculō lēgātum mīsērunt, the sending of an ambassador was attended with danger.

Hostīlis expugnātiō erat, it was an attack made by an enemy.

Propter avāritiam in Asiam profectus est, prompted by avarice, he started for Asia.

Nēquitiae erat metus, it was fear caused by inefficiency.

Flūmen est Arar, there is a river called the Arar.

Virum, Glabriōnem, dēlēgerunt, they chose a man named Glabrio.

288. When present and perfect participles are used as adjectives, that is, when time is not considered, they may be compared:

Frātris amantissimī maerōre moveor, I am affected by the grief of a most loving brother.

Sē parātissimōs cōnfīrmāvērunt, they said that they were very well prepared.

289. A participle in agreement with a noun is often used in Latin, when we should expect a noun with a limiting genitive.

This use is common, especially when the verbal form of the noun is seldom found.

Among the constructions so used are found the nominative, genitive, accusative with **ante, ob, post**, the ablative with **ab**, *from*, the ablative without a preposition, etc.

1. Nominative

Vāsa fictilia iacta eōs perterrēbant, the throwing of earthen jars frightened them.

2. Genitive

Caesarem ad bellum incitābat iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, the wrong done in the retaining of the Roman knights incited Caesar to war.

3. Accusative with Ante

Ante cīvitātem datam in urbe erat, he was in the city before the granting of citizenship.

4. Accusative with Ob

Ob cīvem Rōmānum servātum in beneficiīs ad aerārium dēlātus est, on account of the saving of a Roman citizen, he received honorable mention.

5. Accusative with Post

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius Tūsculum sē contulit, the third year after the expulsion of the kings, Tarquinius went to Tusculum.

6. Ablative with Ab

Annō trecentēsimō et alterō ab urbe conditā imperium cōnsulāre cessāvit, in the three hundred and second year after the founding of Rome the consular government came to an end.

7. Ablative without a Preposition

Domō ineunte vēre exiit, he left home at the beginning of spring.

290. Keep in mind the fact that, although the gerundive and the perfect passive participle may translate the same English words, they do not express the same thought. The gerundive expresses something that is being done, or is to be done; the perfect participle, something that has been done, and is, therefore, completed:

Male rē gestā fortūna dēfuerat, because things had been badly managed, fortune had failed them.

Male gerendō negōtiō in vetere aere aliēnō vacillant, because their business is being badly managed they are staggering under their long-standing debt.

291. **Habēre,** *to have,* and **tenēre,** *to hold,* with a perfect participle in the accusative, call attention to the fact that what has been eagerly desired is now accomplished:

Omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, the Remi said that they had all the facts in their possession.

Cōnstrictam tenērī coniūrātiōnem nōn vidēs? don't you see that your conspiracy is held in check?

Exercise 44

1. After a victory a Roman general in the presence of the whole army gave rewards to those who deserved them. (74.)

2. After the distribution of the rest of the prizes the civic crown was given for the saving of a Roman citizen and at the same time the killing of an enemy. (289, 4 and 5.)

3. By the order of the general the one who had been saved might present this to his preserver. (82.)

4. To a general a triumph was a great honor. (49.)

5. When celebrating a triumph he started from the Campus Martius so that all might have a better view of him. (209.)

6. Along the public ways, through altars smoking with incense, he led his prisoners.

7. Turning his chariot away from the Forum toward the Capitol, he ordered the captive kings and leaders of the enemy to be led to the prison and there put to death. (286, 9; 206.)

8. After offering a prayer to Jupiter and the other great gods, Mars, Apollo, Neptune, Mercury, and Vulcan, he invited his friends and the chief men of the city to a feast in the Capitol. (286, 9 and 12.)

9. The inviting of the consuls was a mere form, because a little while after this he asked them not to come. (289, 1; 206.)

10. Prompted by jealousy, he did this so that no one superior to himself might be present. (268.)

11. The celebrating of a triumph might last more than a day; (that) of Paulus Aemilius lasted three days. (273; 92; 52.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *Those who deserved* were 'the deserving' (ones).

3. The sentence may be expressed as follows:

It was allowed to (*him*) *saved to present this crown to him who had saved* (*him*), or, *it was allowed* (*to him*) *saved to present him* (accusative) *who had saved him with this crown.*

5. *To have a better view of him* is 'to see him more plainly.'

8. *To invite them to a feast in the Capitol* is 'to invite them to come to the Capitol to a feast, or for the purpose of feasting.'

9. *A mere form* is 'in name only.'

10. *Prompted by = on account of.* Do not forget that **nē quis** expresses *that no one* in a purpose clause.

Exercise 45

1. For many years the pirates had had fleets scattered over the whole sea. (52, 291.)

2. The Romans were unable to keep them from entering even a much frequented harbor, although it was under the very eyes of a Roman consul. (275; 74.)

3. This state of affairs became intolerable.

4. At this time Aulus Gabinius brought forward a bill proposing the appointment of one man of consular rank to have supreme power over the whole sea for a period of three years.

5. Notwithstanding the opposition of Catulus, Hortensius, and other eminent men, the bill was passed. (74.)

6. Pompey soon had a large army collected. (291.)

7. Hastening first to Sicily, then to Sardinia, then to Africa, he personally attended to the fortifying of these three granaries of Rome. (286, 9; 128; 198.)

SUGGESTIONS

1. *Over the whole sea:* **per tōtum mare.**

2. *Although it was under the very eyes of a Roman consul* is equivalent to 'while a Roman consul was looking on' (**īnspectāre**, *to look on*).

3. Anything that is *intolerable* is 'not to be borne.' (290.)

4. Rearrange thus: *at this time Aulus Gabinius proposed* (**prōmulgāre**) *a law for* (**dē**) *the appointing* (290) *of one of consular rank to have command* (206) *for three years* (52) *of the sea.*

5. *Catulus, Hortensius, and others opposing* (**reclāmāre**). (74.)

7. Express *first* by **prīmum**, *then* by **deinde**, *then* by **tum**.

Exercise 46

1. The defense of the rest of the ports he left to his lieutenants although it was attended with great danger.

2. Now he was well prepared to pursue the pirates.

3. So rapid was his pursuit that within forty days he conquered and drove them from the part of the sea near Spain.

4. He thus made it possible for a Roman to reach Spain without any danger. (213.)

5. On his return to Italy he learned that the pirates had been seen near Brundisium. (16; 183, 2.)

6. The danger arising from this quarter had to be averted, and everything depended upon prompt action. (286, 7.)

7. He therefore started at once for Brundisium. (58.)

8. Within forty-nine days after leaving this city he had forced the pirates to the coast of Cilicia. (286, 12.)

9. The sinking of the ships of the pirates and the capturing of their crews restored safety to the Romans although they scarcely hoped for it. (289, 1.)

10. To Pompey is to be given the credit of preparing for, beginning, and finishing the war within three months.

SUGGESTIONS

1. Arrange thus: *with great danger to his lieutenants he gave* (trādere) *the defense of the rest of the ports.* (198.)

3. *So rapid was his pursuit = he pursued them so rapidly.* (214.) Express the word *conquered* by the perfect participle: *he drove the conquered.*

4. *To make it possible for one to reach* is 'to bring it about (**efficere**) so that he may be able to come through to.'

6. *The danger was to be averted* (gerundive) *and all things in acting* (**agendō**) *quickly were placed.*

8. Use the ordinal adjective: *on the forty-ninth day.* (78.)

9. The present participle in agreement with **Rōmānīs** will translate the clause, *although they scarcely* (**vix**) *hoped for it.*

10. *To Pompey the credit* (**decus**) *for the war* (genitive) *prepared for, begun, and within three months finished, is to be given* (**tribuendum**).

ADVERBS

292. **Nōn**, *not*, the negative in most common use, is found both with words and sentences:

Nōn scholae, sed vītae discimus, it is not for school, but for life, that we are learning.

Nōn intellegunt hominēs quam magnum vectīgal sit parsi-

mōnia, men do not realize how great a revenue economy furnishes.

293. **Haud,** *not,* is often used with adjectives and adverbs:

Vādimus haud dubiam in mortem, we rush into not doubtful death.

Haud secus ac iussī faciunt, they do not otherwise than ordered.

294. **Nē,** *not,* is used to negative a hortative subjunctive. Remember that this form is present, first plural, and is translated by the English word *let:*

Nē dēspērēmus honōrēs, let us not despair of office.

295. **Nē,** *not,* is used to negative a jussive subjunctive. Observe that this subjunctive is usually in the third person, and is translated by the English word *let:*

Nē patiantur dēsīderiō suī Catilīnam miserum tābēscere, let them not allow poor Catiline to waste away because of his longing for them.

296. **Nē,** *not,* is commonly used to negative an optative subjunctive. This is the subjunctive expressing a wish:

Utinam rēs nē crēdita fuisset! would that the report had not been believed!

297. **Nē,** *not,* is used to negative a purpose clause:

Monuit nē proelium committeret, he advised him not to begin battle.

298. The position of the adverb **nōn,** when used with **nēmō, nihil, nūllī, numquam,** etc., will determine the meaning:

nōn nēmō, some one.	**nēmō nōn,** everybody.
nōn nihil, somewhat.	**nihil nōn,** everything.
nōn nūllī, some people.	**nūllī nōn,** all.
nōn numquam, sometimes.	**numquam nōn,** always.

Erat nōn nēmō in senātū quī dīceret, there was some one in the senate who said.

Nēmō nōn dīxit, everybody said (there was no one who did not say).

Sabīnus nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carpēbātur, Sabinus was somewhat censured by our soldiers.

Nihil nōn perfēcit, he finished everything (there was nothing that he did not finish).

Esse nōn nūllōs quī plūs possint quam magistrātūs, (Liscus says) that there are some people who have more influence than the magistrates have.

Nūllī nōn vēnērunt, all came (there were none who did not come).

Nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere conātī sunt, sometimes by day, more often by night, they tried to force their way.

Malefacere quī vult numquam nōn causam invenit, one who would do wrong always finds a pretext.

299. **Nihil,** *nothing*, is sometimes used instead of **nōn.** (**Nihil** is then an adverbial accusative.)

Hī nihil Caesaris imperium exspectābant, these did not wait for orders from Caesar.

300. English adverbs are often expressed by Latin nouns, adjectives, verbs, etc.:

He was naturally cruel, **nātūrā saevus erat.**

They came unwillingly, **invītī vēnērunt.**

This is usually the case, **hoc fere sīc fierī solet.**

301. Latin adverbs may often be translated by English nouns, adjectives, etc.:

Hominēs nihil agendō discunt male agere, by having nothing to do, men learn to do evil.

Fortiter ferendō saepe vincitur malum, it often happens that misfortune is overcome by brave endurance.

302. In English, we use such expressions as 'And one cannot tell,' 'And one never knows'; in Latin, however, show the negation early in the sentence:

Neque quisquam potest dīcere, and not any one can tell (and no one can tell).

Neque quicquam aliud adsecūtī sunt, and they accomplished not anything else (and they accomplished nothing else).

In this connection, notice that the verb **negō** appears early in a sentence:

Negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, he says that he cannot allow any one the right of way through the province.

303. Distinguish between **prīmum** and **prīmō**. Usually **prīmō** means *at first;* **prīmum,** *for the first time:*

Fāma parva metū prīmō, gossip is little at first because of her fear.

Hīc prīmum tēlīs nostrōrum obruimur, here for the first time, we are overpowered by the weapons used by our friends.

304. In a series, **prīmum** or **prīmō** is used to mean *first;* **deinde,** *then, secondly;* **tum,** *then, thirdly;* **dēnique, postrēmō,** *lastly:*

Prīmum mihi vidētur dē genere bellī, deinde dē magnitūdine, tum dē imperātōre dēligendō esse dīcendum, it seems proper for me to speak first about the character of the war, then about its importance, thirdly about the choice of a commander for this war.

305. *Not even* is expressed in Latin by **nē . . . quidem**; the emphatic words are placed between **nē** and **quidem**:

Nē ūnum quidem impetum sustinēre poterant, not even one attack could they withstand.

PREPOSITIONS

306. Time, place, cause, manner, source, accompaniment, and other relations may be shown in Latin by the use of a preposition with its case. Again, the case alone may express the thought.

307. In English we often use two prepositions with the same word; as a rule avoid this in Latin:

Vel vōbīscum vel sine vōbīs itūrī sunt, either with or without you they intend to go.

308. One preposition may be used with more than one object if the objects are closely connected in thought:

Ab Sēquanīs Haeduīsque lēgātī veniēbant, ambassadors kept coming from the Sequanians and the Haedui.

309. The same preposition may be repeated with two or more nouns:

Magnus in bellō et in pāce fuit, distinguished was he in both war and peace.

310. As a rule prepositions precede the words which they govern. Among the exceptions note carefully:

Mēcum, *with me;* **nōbīscum,** *with us;* **tēcum,** *with you;* **vōbīscum,** *with you;* **sēcum,** *with himself, herself, itself, themselves;* **quōcum, quibuscum,** *with whom.*

311. Pay careful attention to the translation of English prepositions. The Latin for these must be determined by the thought, not the word, to be expressed.

Some of the translations of a few English prepositions may be understood from the following phrases and sentences:

312. OF

From the founding of the city, **ab urbe conditā** (a. u. c.).

H (636, 4); LM 1013; AG 292, *a*; G 325, Rem. 3; B 337, 5.

Top of the mountain, **summus mōns.**

H (497, 4); LM 565; AG 193; G 291, Rem. 2; B 241.

What is the price of corn? **quantī frūmentum est?**

H (448, 1); LM 576; AG 252, *a*; G 380; B 203, 3.

They despair of office, **honōrēs dēspērant.**

H (405, 1, note); LM 502; AG 237, *b*; G 330, Rem.; B 175, 2, *b*.

They wish to deprive him of life, **vītā eum prīvāre volunt.**

H (462); LM 601; AG 243, *a*; G 390, 2; B. 214, 1, *a*.

I shall inform you of the fact, **dē rē tē certiōrem faciam.**

A man of great valor, **vir summā virtūte.**

H (473, 2); LM 643; AG 251; G 400; B 224.

There is but one in command of all the Druids, **hīs omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus.**

H (429); LM 532; AG 228; G 347; B 187, III.

One of his sons was captured, **ūnus ex fīliīs captus** est.

H (444); LM 563; AG 216, 4, *c*; G 372, Rem. 2; B 201, 1, *a*.

Cups of gold, **aurea pōcula.**

Cups of gold, **pōcula facta ex aurō.**

H (467); LM 610; AG 244, *e*; G 396.

Cups of gold, **pōcula plēna aurī** or **aurō.**

H (477, II, 2); LM 573; AG 218, *a*; G 374; B 204.

He was the son of a goddess, **nātus deā erat.**

H (469, 2); LM 609; AG 244, 2, *a*; G 395; B 215.

They are of German descent, **ortī ab Germānīs sunt.**

H (469, 1); LM 609; AG 244, 2, *a*, Rem.; G 395; B 215, 2.

313. To (Into)

He came to Rome, **Rōmam vēnit.**

He came to our house, **domum nostram vēnit.**

He came to our house, **in domum nostram vēnit.**

They are moving back into the large house, **in magnam domum remigrant.**

H (418, 419); LM 515, 520; AG 258, *b*, note 1; G 337, Rem. 3; B 182, note.

What difference does it make to you or to the general? **quid id rēfert tuā aut imperātōris?**

H (449, 1); LM 579, 580; AG 222, *a*; G 381, 382; B 211, 1, *a*.

The way to Brundisium is not very long, **iter Brundisīnum** (adjective) **nōn est longissimum.**

The passage to Britain was difficult, **trānsitus in Britanniam erat difficilis.**

Āversus ā vērō esse vidētur, he seems to be opposed to the truth.

H (462, 1); LM 600; AG 243; G 390; B 214.

Such is the road to success, **sīc itur ad astra.**

Proximī sunt Germānīs, they are next to the Germans.

H (434, 1, 2); LM 536; AG 234, *a*; G 359; B 192, 1.

Proximī Rhēnum incolunt, they live next to the Rhine.

H (420, 5); LM 1201; AG 234, *e*; G 359, 3, note; B 141, 3.

314. For

He asks the reason for your coming, **rogat cūr veniās (vēneris).**

Man is born for understanding and acting, **homō ad intellegendum et ad agendum est nātus.**

H (628); LM 995; AG 300; G 432; B 338, 3.

He kept dunning them for money, **pecūniam eōs flāgitābat.**

H (411); LM 552; AG 239, 2, *c*; G 339; B 178.

Suī cōnservandī causā profūgērunt, they fled for the sake of saving themselves.

H (475, 2); LM 570; AG 223, *e*; G 373; B 198, 1.

Now is the time for play, **tempus est lūdendī.**

H (626); LM 989; AG 298; G 428; B 338, 1, *a*.

They have been in Italy for years, **multōs annōs in Ītaliā fuērunt.**

H (417); LM 513; AG 240, *e*; G 336; B 181.

He sold his country for gold, **aurō patriam vēndidit.**

H (478); LM 653; AG 252; G 404; B 225.

A mother's love for her son, **mātris amor fīlī.**

H (440, 2); LM 571; AG 217; G 363, 2; B 200.

A mother's love for her son, **mātris amor in** (or **ergā**) **fīlium.**

I must live with them or die for them, **mihi aut cum hīs vīvendum aut prō his est moriendum.**

H (490, 2); LM 663; AG 236, Rem.; G 345, Rem. 2; B 142.

It will be dangerous for you to go, **perīculōsum erit vōs ire.** (190.)

He could not speak for his tears, **prae lacrimīs loquī nōn poterat.** (**Prae** is used here to express a cause, and this use occurs in negative clauses only.)

315. By

An entrance is made by force, **fit via vī.**

They took the money by force, **per vim pecūniā potītī sunt.**

They marched by the building, **praeter aedificium iter fēcērunt.**

The facts were announced by the scouts, **eae rēs ab explōrātōribus (per explōrātōrēs) nūntiātae sunt.**

They came to our city by the hundred, **centēnī ad nostram urbem vēnērunt.**

Their number increases day by day (daily), **eōrum numerus crēscit in diēs (in singulōs diēs).**

Sometimes by day, more often by night, they tried to force their way, **nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere cōnātī sunt.**

He tried to find it out by letter, **per litterās eam rem petere conātus est.**

He accomplished that by himself, **per sē eam rem perfēcit.**

They decided to go by themselves, **sōlī īre cōnstituērunt.**

There was an old bay tree near by, **fuit iūxtā veterrima laurus.**

The wall was struck by lightning, **mūrus dē caelō tāctus est.**

The general by delaying conquered the enemy, **dux morātus hostēs vīcit.**

316. WITH

He was struck violently with a sword, **gladiō vī percussus est.**

There he stood with his sword on, **stābat cum gladiō.**

They wrote with care (carefully), **magnā cum cūrā scrībēbant.**

It is all over with us, **āctum est dē nōbīs.**

I do not agree with you, **dissentiō ā tē.**

The effect ceases with the cause, **cessante causā, cessat effectus.**

Some started with us, others with him, **aliī nōbīscum, aliī cum eō profectī sunt.**

He says that they fought with him, **dīcit eōs sēcum pugnāvisse.**

He marched into Gaul with an army, **ipse cum exercitū in Galliam iter fēcit.**

He started with five hundred soldiers, **ipse cum quīngentīs mīlitibus profectus est.**

He started with many soldiers, **multīs mīlitibus profectus est.**

It was with great danger that they crossed the bridge, **magnō cum perīculō trāns pontem trānsiērunt.**

After the war with the Helvetians the rest of the Gauls came to congratulate Caesar, **bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, reliquī Gallī ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt.**

317. WITHOUT

Sine causā in eōs impetum fēcērunt, they attacked them without cause.

He crossed the river without any danger, **sine ūllō perīculō trāns flūmen trānsiit.**

He crossed the river without any opposition, **nūllō impediente, trāns flūmen trānsiit.**

They came without an invitation, **nōn invītātī vēnērunt.**

They came without its being known, **occultē vēnērunt.**

They came without our consent, **nōbīs invītīs, vēnērunt.**

I cannot leave without saying this, **nōn possum abīre neque haec dīcō.**

He could not answer without knowing, **is, cum nōn intēllegeret, respondēre nōn poterat.**

Remember these words, 'not a day without a line,' **memoriā tenē, 'nūlla diēs sine lineā.'**

I did not allow a single day to pass without writing some kind of a letter to you, **nūllum diem intermīsī quīn aliquid ad tē litterārum darem.**

318. FROM

In war great results arise from slight causes, **in bellō parvīs momentīs magnī cāsūs intercēdunt.**

They came from the city, **ab urbe vēnērunt.**

They came from Rome, **Rōmā vēnērunt.**

They came from the city, Rome, **ab urbe Rōmā vēnērunt.**

They came from home, **domō vēnērunt.**

From one o'clock until evening they fought, **ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum est.**

He fears unpopularity arising from negligence, **invidiam nēquitiae pertimēscit.**

Rome was a monarchy from the founding of the city until its liberation, **rēgnātum est Rōmae ab urbe conditā ad līberātam.**

319. IN

He spent the winter in a town in Gaul, **in Galliae oppidō hiemābat.**

In my opinion he ought to have a share in the general's glory, **meā quidem sententiā expers esse nōn dēbet glōriae eius imperātōris.**

You were chosen in his stead, **illīus locō dēlēctus es.**

He died in his twentieth year, **vīcēsimō annō aetātis suae mortuus est.**

Why are they so particular in the case of this general? **cūr sunt tam dīligentēs in hōc imperātōre?**

It was done in good faith, **bonā fidē factum est.**

He was a soldier in name, not in fact, **mīles nōn rē sed nōmine erat.**

He began to speak in the presence of the general, **cōram imperātōrem fārī coepit.**

He called out in the presence of his army, **exercitū suō praesente, conclāmāvit.**

He has confidence in the soldier, **mīlite cōnfīdit.**

I pass over many things in silence, **multa taceō.**

He fought fearlessly in the midst of the enemy, **fortiter inter hostēs pugnābat.**

In alarm they fled, **trepidī fugiēbant.**

He was distinguished in war and in peace, **magnus in bellō et in pāce erat.**

In conclusion let us say this, **postrēmō haec dīcāmus.**

Vel pāce vel bellō clārum fierī licet, one may be distinguished either in peace or war.

320. On

They started on the first of October, **ad Kalendās Octōbrēs (Kalendīs Octōbribus) profectī sunt.**

No one could stand on the wall, **in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī.**

They began to throw stones on the wall, **in mūrum lapidēs iacere coepērunt.**

The stones are lying on the ground, **humī lapidēs iacent.**

They fought on land and sea, **terrā marīque pugnātum est.**

The auxiliaries were on the left, **ab sinistrā auxilia cōnstitērunt.**

She asked for what they wore on their left hands, **illa petiit quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent.**

They made an attack on them on the march, **ex itinere in eōs impetum fēcērunt.**

That was a report on hearsay, **dictum est dē dictō.**

He asks many favors on the ground of acquaintance, **is, quod tē nōvit, multa petit.**

Cicero says that he is always on hand, **Cicero dīcit sē semper adesse.**

They say that everything has been done with the greatest care on their part, **dīcunt omnia suā summā cūrā facta esse.**

On the coming of Caesar the enemy surrendered, **hostēs postquam Caesar vēnit sē dēdidērunt.**

They live on milk and eggs, **lacte et ōvīs vīvunt.**

On the arrival of the news the army broke camp, **postquam nūntiātum est exercitus castra mōvit.**

A part was on this side of the river, **pars citrā flūmen erat.**

Some were on the side of the Romans, others, the Germans, **aliī Rōmānōrum, aliī Germānōrum erant.**

321. Out

Out of sight, out of mind, **absēns hēres nōn erit.**

Out of respect to Diviciacus Caesar pardoned Dumnorix, **Caesar Dīviciācī honōris causā Dumnorīgī īgnōvit.**

What can you make out of such a boy? **quid hōc puerō faciās?**

He can look out for his own interests, **sibi cōnsulere potest.**

He is never out of debt, **numquam aere aliēnō solūtus est.**

322. Under

Under the leadership of the gods the victory was won, **dīs immortālibus ducibus, vīcērunt.**

Under these circumstances they ought to erect a temple in honor of the gods.

Quae cum ita sint
Cum ea ita sint
Ob eās rēs } **iīs deōrum honōris causā templum pōnendum est.**

They made the army pass under the yoke, **fēcērunt ut exercitus sub iugum mitterētur.**

The book is under the desk, **liber est sub mēnsā.**

They could not hold office under our government, **imperiō nostrō imperāre nōn poterant.**

Under no circumstances could this be arranged, **pactō nūllō poterat fierī.**

He escaped under cover of night, **in noctem sē coniēcit.**

COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

323. Words and clauses in the same construction are usually joined by coördinate conjunctions.

324. **Et**, *and*, is the most common Latin connective for either words or sentences:

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī, it is sweet and glorious to die for one's country.

Omnia mūtantur nōs et mūtāmur in illīs, all things are subject to change, and we change with them.

325. In many cases, **et** will express more than the English *and*:

Et haec dīximus, and we said this besides.

Multa quoque et bellō passus, many things also he suffered in war too.

326. **-que**, *and*, shows a closer connection than **et**, and is usually joined to the second of two words to be connected, or to a modifier of the second word:

Senātus populusque Rōmānus (S.P.Q.R.), the Senate and the Roman people.

Reperiēbat nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum īnferrī, he found that they allowed no wine and other things to be brought into their country.

327. When **-que** connects two clauses, it is usually joined to the first word of the second clause, unless the

first word is a preposition (**-que** may be joined to any monosyllabic preposition except **ob** and **sub**):

Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit, Caesar brought the interview to an end and betook himself to his own men.

Respondet ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī inque eam rem suam fidem interpōnere, his answer is, surely no harm shall come to him, and to this he pledges himself.

328. **Atque** (**ac**), *and, and also,* is used to connect words and sentences, the second of which is more important than the first. **Atque** is used before either vowels or consonants; **ac**, before consonants. When **atque** (**ac**) connects sentences, it usually stands first in the sentence:

Rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus est, he was called king and also friend by the senate.

Hoc habē in memoriā atque pectore, keep this in your mind and thoughts.

Atque ille eō tempore pāruit, and at that time he obeyed.

Vēritātis absolūtus sermō ac semper est simplex, the language of truth is unadorned and is always simple.

Ac nē illud quidem vōbīs neglegendum est, and you must neglect not even that.

329. **Neque** (**nec**), *and not,* is the negative of **et**. **Et nōn,** *and not,* may be used to negative a word:

Inermis sum, neque quicquam habeō praeter hanc tubam, I am unarmed, and I have nothing except this trumpet.

Ille sē Massiliam nōn in haec castra cōnferet, he will go to Massilia, not to this camp.

330. **Etiam,** *still, even, yet, also, and further, what is more,* etc., usually adds force to the word which it precedes:

Prōditōrēs etiam iīs quŏs antepōnunt invīsī sunt, traitors are despised even by those whom they help.

331. **Quoque,** *also, too, additional, as well,* etc., adds emphasis to the word that it follows:

Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperuistis? why did you not open a place of refuge for women also?

332. **Aut,** *or,* is usĕd when one alternative absolutely excludes the other:

Vinceris aut vincis, you are being conquered or you are conquering.

Aut . . . aut, *either . . . or:*

Aut exeant aut quiescant, let them either go out or keep still.

333. **Vel,** *or* (from **volō,** *I wish*), may be used when the choice depends upon the person:

Cessit auctōritātī, vel potius pāruit, he submitted to authority, or rather, he obeyed.

334. **Vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or:*

Allobrogibus sēse vel persuāsūrōs exīstimābant vel vī coāctūrōs, they thought that they could either persuade the Allobroges or force them.

335. **Sīve** (**seu**), *or, if you choose,* may suggest a choice of two names for the same object:

Mare Tyrrhēnum sīve īnferum, the Tuscan or lower sea.

336. **Sīve . . . sīve,** *whether . . . or:*

Sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium Tigurīnī poenās persolvērunt, whether by chance or by the will of the gods, the Tigurini paid the penalty.

337. **Sed**, *but, however:*

Nōn rēfert quam multōs librōs sed quam bonōs habeat, it makes no difference how many books one has, but how good they are.

338. **Vērum**, *but, truly, it is true, really*, etc., is stronger than **sed**, and stands first in a sentence:

Vērum tamen illīs imperātōribus laus est tribuenda quod ēgērunt, but for all that, praise must be given to those commanders for what they have done.

339. **Vērō**, *but indeed, in fact, no doubt, of course*, etc., is usually placed second in a sentence:

Hīc vērō ingentem pugnam cernimus, but here indeed we see a great battle.

340. **Autem**, *but, furthermore, on the other hand*, etc., is usually placed second in a sentence:

Ego autem nōminō nēminem, but I mention no names.

341. **At**, *but, at least, on the contrary*, etc.:

At enim 'nē quid novī fīat,' but (some object) for they are opposed to innovations (they say).

342. **Tamen**, *yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless, after all, for all that, in spite of that fact*, etc., is usually first in a sentence, but if it emphasizes a word, it follows that word:

Tamen lēgātīs respondit, notwithstanding, he replied to the ambassadors.

Sēsē tamen exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī, saying that he, in spite of that fact, was influenced by public opinion.

343. **Nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also, but even.*

Nōn modo . . . vērum etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

Nōn sōlum . . . vērum etiam, *not only . . . but also.* (This is not the only thing; something more is to follow.)

Cum . . . tum, *not only . . . but also, on the one hand . . . on the other, while . . . at the same time.*

Nōn modo post cīvitātem datam sed etiam post lēgem Pāpiam, not only after the granting of citizenship, but even after the Papian law.

Quī librī nōn modo Lūcullum, vērum etiam populī Rōmānī nōmen inlūstrant, these works make not only Lucullus but also the name of the Roman people famous.

Populī Rōmānī glōria cum magna in omnibus rēbus tum summa in rē mīlitārī trādita est, the glory of the Roman people not only great in all things, but also greatest in military matters, has been handed down.

344. **Enim,** *for, really, indeed, in fact, well,* etc., is usually found in the second or third place in a sentence:

Nōn enim hoc sine causā quaerī vidētur, for really this seems to be a sensible question.

Nūlla est enim nātiō quam pertimēscāmus, for there is no nation which we have to fear.

345. **Etenim,** *for, and indeed, in truth, since,* etc., is placed first in a sentence:

Etenim iam diū in hīs perīculīs versāmur, for we have been living for a long time in the midst of these dangers.

346. **Neque enim** is the negative of **etenim:**

Neque enim tibi haec rēs adfert dolōrem, for, undoubtedly, such a course as this does not trouble you.

347. **Nam**, *for*, *for surely*, *but now*, *for it is evident*, etc., takes the first place in a sentence:

Nam propter frīgora frūmenta mātūra nōn erant, for, on account of the cold seasons, the grain was not ripe.

348. **Namque**, *for*, *for indeed*, *for*, *you know*, etc., is stronger than **nam**:

Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, for indeed the greatest abundance of all things which were indispensable in war was in this town.

349. **Ergō**, *therefore*, *now*, *accordingly*, *then*, *well then*, *consequently*, etc., has first place in a sentence or follows an important word:

Ergō illum maiōrēs nostrī in cīvitātem recēpērunt, therefore our ancestors made him a citizen.

350. **Itaque**, *and so*, *therefore*, is usually placed first in a sentence:

Itaque rem suscipit, and so he undertakes the mission.

351. **Igitur**, *therefore*, *you see*, *so then*, *as I was saying*, *pursuing this course*, etc., usually takes the second or third place in a sentence (Sallust places **igitur** first):

Fuistī igitur apud Laecam, you were, as I was saying, at Laeca's.

352. Observe the following:

Scientiam reī mīlitāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlīcitātem. (In this, the coördinate conjunction is omitted.)

Dīligentiam et iūstitiam et cōmitātem, et fidem. (Note the use of **et**.)

Bona, fōrtūnās, coniugēs, līberōsque. (Note the use of **-que** to connect the last two words.)

DATES

353. The Romans divided their year into twelve months, the names of which are adjectives:

Iānuārius	a	um	
Februārius	a	um	
Mārtius	a	um	
Aprīlis	is	e	
Māius	a	um	
Iūnius	a	um	
Quīntīlis	is	e	(so-called before 46 B.C.)
Iūlius	a	um	
Sextīlis	is	e	(so-called before 46 B.C.)
Augustus	a	um	

September	Septembris	Septembre
Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
November	Novembris	Novembre
December	Decembris	Decembre

354. The names given to the three days of the month from which the Romans reckon the date are, **Kalendae**, **Nōnae**, and **Īdūs**.

We often say "so many days until the first of the month," "so many days before a certain time"; a Roman always said "so many days before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides."

355. The *first* day of the month was called **Kalendae**, *the Kalends:*

> "In March, July, October, May,
> The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
> The Nones the seventh; but all besides
> Have two days less for Nones and Ides."

356. Remember that the Romans count the day *from* which and the day *to* which they reckon, and that a date is very often expressed by the prepositional phrase **ante diem** with an ordinal and accusative.

357. If a date falls between the Kalends and Nones, add *one* to the date on which the Nones fall, and from this sum subtract the given date. For example:

July 4 comes between July 1 and July 7 (7 + 1 − 4 = 4), therefore the Latin will be **ante diem quārtum Nōnās Quīntīlēs** or **Iūliās.**

358. If a date falls between the Nones and Ides, add *one* to the date on which the Ides fall, and subtract the given date. For example:

June 10 falls between June 5 and June 13 (13 + 1 − 10 = 4), hence this will be expressed by the Latin, **ante diem quārtum Īdūs Iūniās.**

359. If a date comes *after* the Ides of a month, add *two* to the number of days in that month and subtract the given date. For example:

December 25 is after December 13 (31 + 2 − 25 = 8), hence the Latin will be **ante diem octāvum Kalendās Iānuāriās.**

360. If a date comes immediately before the **Kalendae, Nōnae,** or **Īdūs,** show this, as a rule, by the use of **prīdiē** with the accusative:

Prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās, December 31.
Prīdiē Īdūs Decembrēs, December 12.
Prīdiē Nōnās Decembrēs, December 4.

361. If a date falls on the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, show this by using the ablative without a preposition or the accusative with **ad**:

Kalendīs Iūniīs / **ad Kalendās Iūniās** } June 1. **Nōnīs Aprīlibus** / **ad Nōnās Aprīlīs** } April 5.

Īdibus Mārtiīs / **ad Īdūs Mārtiās** } March 15.

362. To express the year add or subtract, as may be required, the given date from 753 B.C., the time of the founding of Rome:

31 B.C. = 722 A.U.C. (**ab urbe conditā**).

14 A.D. = 767 A.U.C.

Rome was founded April 21, 753 B.C.

Exercise 47

1. Marcus Tullius Cicero was born January 3, 106 B.C., near Arpinum. (357.)

2. On the first of January, 63 B.C., he became consul. (361.)

3. A formal decree of banishment was published against him, April 3, 58 B.C. (357.)

4. The senate recalled him August 4, 57 B.C. (360.)

5. On the last day of July, 51 B.C., he went as proconsul to Cilicia. (360; 62.)

6. From this place he returned January 4, 49 B.C. (360.)

7. When Caesar and Pompey were fighting against each other, Cicero remained with Pompey until the battle of Pharsalus, August 9, 48 B.C. (358.)

8. On the thirtieth of November he returned to Brundisium. (360.)

9. Here he remained until August 1, 47 B.C., when he was informed by a letter from Caesar that he had no reason to fear. (361; 50, 2.)

10. Freed from his fearful anxiety, he returned to Rome, September 22, 47 B.C. (97; 359.)

Exercise 48

Besides the works of Cicero which are best known to us are his Fourteen Philippics, or Speeches against Antony, delivered before the senate on about the following dates:

September 2, 44 B.C.
September 19, 44 B.C.
November 20, 44 B.C.
December 20, 44 B.C.
January 1, 43 B.C.
January 4, 43 B.C.
January 31, 43 B.C.
February 12, 43 B.C.
March 3, 43 B.C.
March 8, 43 B.C.
March 22, 43 B.C.
April 1, 43 B.C.
April 22, 43 B.C.

References: 353–362.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

363. Direct Discourse is a person's speech or thought quoted in his exact words.

Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt, it was not I who made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on me (said Ariovistus to Caesar).

364. Indirect Discourse contains, not one's exact words, but his speech or thought dependent upon a verb or expression of saying, thinking, knowing, or perceiving, either expressed or implied in the context.

Ariovistus respondit: nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse, Ariovistus replied that it was not he who had made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on him.

365. In English, we often follow another's thoughts and state them directly, changing only the tense of the verb.

In Latin, however, changes in mode, tense, case, and person are made.

Declarative sentences of direct discourse when changed to indirect discourse require the infinitive with subject accusative in the principal clauses; the subjunctive, in the subordinate clauses.

(Direct.) **Ex illā diē quā in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnī, Rōmānus esse dēsiī,** from the day on which I fell into the power of the Africans, I ceased to be a Roman.

(Indirect.) **Regulus dīxit sē ex illā diē quā in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnisset Rōmānum esse dēsīsse,** Regulus said that from the day on which he fell into the power of the Africans, he had ceased to be a Roman.

366. Observe that a writer sometimes uses the indicative in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, when he wishes to state a fact.

Sē tantī nōn esse ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter ūnum sē et senem et paucōs quī ex Rōmānīs captī fuerant redderentur, saying that he was not of so much importance that so many thousands of prisoners should be returned in exchange for one, an old man too, and the few Romans who had been taken prisoners.

367. Interrogative sentences of direct discourse when changed to indirect discourse require the subjunctive.

(Direct.) **Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs?** what do you mean? why do you come into my lands?

(Indirect.) **Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret?** in reply to Caesar's demands, Ariovistus had little to say, but about his own virtues he did much boasting. What did he mean? Why did he come into his lands?

368. Do not forget that declarative sentences may take the form of a question implying a negative answer, and are called rhetorical questions.

In direct discourse, rhetorical questions are used in both indicative and subjunctive.

Quid est quod tē dēlectāre possit? what is there that can please you? (Nothing.)

Quis nōn eam victoriam probet? who would not approve of such a victory? (There is no one who would not approve.)

369. Rhetorical questions of the direct discourse when changed to the indirect discourse are expressed by the infinitive with subject accusative, when they are first or third person; by the subjunctive, when second person.

(Direct.) **Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī volō, num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum?** but if I am willing to forget the old insult, can I forget the late wrongs?

(Indirect.) **Hīs Caesar respondit: Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīviscī vellet num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere posse?** Caesar replied as follows: If he were willing to forget the old insult, could he forget the late wrongs?

Rhetorical questions which are in the subjunctive in direct discourse keep the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

(Direct.) **Cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet?** why should any one think that he would forget his obligations to us?

(Indirect.) **Eōs incūsāvit: Cūr hunc quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret,** he censured them, saying, Why should any one think that Ariovistus could forget his obligations to the Romans?

370. Note the changes in pronouns shown in the following sentences of direct and indirect discourse.

(Direct.) **Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt,** it was not I who made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on me.

(Indirect.) **Ariovistus respondit: nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse,** Ariovistus replied that it was not he who had made war on the Gauls, but the Gauls on him.

(Direct.) **Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte,** it was not on my own account that I crossed the Rhine.

(Indirect.) **Ariovistus respondit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte,** Ariovistus replied that it was not on his own account that he had crossed the Rhine.

371. Imperative sentences of direct discourse become subjunctive in indirect discourse and are expressed sometimes with **ut**, more often without **ut**, if affirmative; with **nē**, if negative.

(Direct.) **Reminīscerē prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,** remember the former valor of the Helvetians.

(Indirect.) **Dīxit, reminīscerētur prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum,** remember, he said, the former valor of the Helvetians.

(Direct.) **Nōlīte iuvāre eōs frūmentō,** do not assist them with grain.

(Indirect.) **Litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō iuvārent,** he sent orders for them not to assist them with grain.

372. The perfect infinitive of indirect discourse may represent the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative of the direct discourse.

Caesar cōgnōvit Helvētiōs castra mōvisse, Caesar learned that the Helvetians were breaking camp, did break camp, or had broken camp.

373. When a conditional sentence is changed from direct to indirect discourse, the protasis or condition, since this is a subordinate clause, is expressed by the subjunctive. The tense usually follows the law of sequence of tenses, but often in long speeches the time refers to the time of the speaker.

DIRECT	INDIRECT
Sī pugnant, vincunt	**Dīcit sī pugnent, eōs vincere.** **Dīxit sī pugnārent, eōs vincere.**
Sī pugnābant, vincēbant	**Dīcit sī pugnārent eōs vīcisse.** **Dīxit sī pugnārent eōs vīcisse.**
Sī pugnābunt, vincent	**Dīcit sī pugnent eōs victūrōs esse.** **Dīxit sī pugnārent eōs victūrōs esse.**
Sī pugnāverint, vincent	**Dīcit sī pugnāverint eōs victūrōs esse.** **Dīxit sī pugnāvissent eōs victūrōs esse.**

374. Keep in mind the fact that the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse when changed to indirect discourse becomes perfect subjunctive after a principal tense, pluperfect after a historical tense.

(Direct.) **Id fierī poterit, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum introdūxerint,** this can be done, if the Haedui will lead (will have led) their forces into the territory of the Bellovaci.

(Indirect.) **Docet id fierī posse sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum introdūxerint,** he shows that this can be done, if the Haedui lead their forces into the territory of the Bellovaci.

(Direct.) **Sī discesseris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābō,** if you withdraw (will have withdrawn), I shall reward you handsomely.

(Indirect.) **Ariovistus respondit: Sī discessisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum,** Ariovistus replied that he would reward Caesar handsomely, if he would withdraw.

375. In changing contrary to fact conditions from direct to indirect discourse, remember that the protasis or condition remains unchanged, whether after a principal or historical tense.

Note the changes to be made in the apodosis or conclusion of contrary to fact conditions, when these are changed from direct to indirect discourse.

DIRECT	INDIRECT
Imperfect subjunctive active becomes	Future infinitive active.
Imperfect subjunctive passive becomes	**Futūrum esse Fore** ut, with the imperfect subjunctive.
Pluperfect subjunctive active becomes	Infinitive in **-ūrus fuisse.**
Pluperfect subjunctive passive becomes	**Futūrum fuisse ut** with the imperfect subjunctive.

(Direct.) **Sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārēs, in castra exercitum dūcerēs,** if you thought it the best thing to do, you would lead the army into camp.

(Indirect.) **Dīcō / Dīxī** **sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārēs, in castra tē exercitum ductūrum esse.**

(Direct.) **Sapientia nōn expeterētur sī nihil efficeret,** wisdom would not be so eagerly sought for, if it amounted to nothing.

(Indirect.) **Dīcō / Dīxī** } **futūrum esse (fore) ut sapientia nōn expeterētur sī nihil efficeret.**

(Direct.) **Sī Catilīna remānsisset urbem nōn līberāssēmus,** if Catiline had stayed, we could not have freed the city.

(Indirect.) **Dīcō / Dīxī** } **sī Catilīna remānsisset, nōs urbem nōn līberātūrōs fuisse.**

(Direct.) **Sī Catilīna remānsisset, ā nōbīs urbs nōn līberāta fuisset,** if Catiline had stayed, the city could not have been freed by us.

(Indirect.) **Dīcō / Dīxī** } **sī Catilīna remānsisset, futūrum fuisse ut ā nōbīs urbs nōn līberārētur.**

376. Remember that in a past contrary to fact conditional sentence made to depend upon **dubitō**, doubt, the **quīn** clause will be the apodosis; when this is in the active voice, express it by the perfect subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation (**-ūrus fuerim**).

Potest quisquam dubitāre quīn, sī in Āfricā fuisset, tibi prōvinciam trāditūrus fuerit, can any one doubt that if he had been in Africa, he would have delivered the province to you?

Exercise 49

It is said that a certain woman called Amalthea, a foreigner, came to Tarquinius Superbus to sell nine books: but on Tarquin's refusal to give her the price which she asked, she went away and burned three of the books.

Soon after, she returned and demanded the same price for the remaining six books. What did she mean? Why did she bring those books?

After the king had ridiculed her and called her a foolish old woman, she burned three others, in his presence.

Surprised to see this, Tarquin asked the augurs what was the best thing to do.

They advised the king to give her the price which she had demanded.

REFERENCES: 287; 206; 197; 60; 74; 189; 167; 205.

EXERCISE 50

It is said that when Amalthea had delivered the books and had advised the king to guard them carefully, she disappeared and was never afterwards seen in Rome.

Tarquin committed the care of these books, called the Sibylline books or fates, to two noblemen, ordering them to guard them faithfully, and to remember that they contained the fate of Rome and the Romans.

In public danger, they, (as) the keepers of these books, were frequently ordered to consult them.

These books, which were held sacred, were kept underground in the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. But when the Capitol was burned in the Marsic war, the Sibylline books also were destroyed.

REFERENCES: 237; 206; 39; 198; 335; 331.

EXERCISE 51

After the burning of the Capitol ambassadors were sent in all directions to collect the oracles of the Sibyls. For there were other Sibyls besides the one who had come to Tarquin.

The chief of these were the Sibyl of Cumae, whom Aeneas is thought to have consulted, and the Sibyl of Erythrae, who used to give such ambiguous answers that no one seemed to understand them.

From the various Sibylline verses collected new books were made. These Augustus deposited in two gilt cases, which were placed under the statue of Apollo, in the temple of that god, on the Palatine Hill.

Before these were put into the cases, however, Augustus, fearing that the verses which had been collected could not be easily read, ordered the priests to rewrite them.

REFERENCES: 206; 44; 271; 268; 274; 344; 345; 347; 348.

NAMES OF ROMANS

377. The names Romulus and Remus indicate that at first a Roman had but one name; Numa Pompilius and the names of the other kings show that later a Roman had two names; the name Gaius Iulius Caesar shows that still later three names were used. This was the case when they were divided into various clans (**gentes**), and each clan into several families (**familiae**).

378. The Praenomen was the first name and showed the individual. The initial, instead of the whole name, was often used. Slaves had no praenomen.

379. The Nomen showed the clan (**gens**), and it usually ended in **ius**.

380. The Cognomen showed the family (**familia**).

381. Sometimes, as a mark of honor, a fourth name, Agnomen, was added.

382. The Cognomen was usually derived from a certain quality of the mind; as **Cato**, from the adjective **catus**, wise; or from a certain habit; as **Crassus**, from the adjective **crassus**, fat, — the person Crassus, therefore, was slow; or from the occupation; as **Piso**, from **pīsa**, a pea, because the first Piso had raised vegetables, especially pease.

383. The name **Gāius Iūlius Caesar** shows that Gaius was one member of the Caesar family of the Julian gens.

384. Some clans seem to have had no family names; for example, the Marian gens, for we find Gāius Marius.

LETTERS

385. In formal or official correspondence, Cicero frequently uses the formula "**Sī valēs, bene est,**" usually written thus, "S. V. B. E.," at the beginning of his letter. In his letters to Pompey, he begins in a still more formal way, "S. T. E. Q. V. B. E.," "**Sī tū exercitusque valētis, bene est,**" if you and your army are in good health, it is well.

386. The following is a copy of one of Cicero's letters to his friend Atticus:

CICERŌ ATTICŌ SAL

Terentia tibi et saepe et maximās agit grātiās. Id est mihi grātissimum. Ego vīvō miserrimus et maximō dolōre cōnficior. Ad tē quid scrībam nesciō. Sī enim es Rōmae, iam mē assequī nōn potes; sīn es in viā, cum eris mē assecūtus, cōram agēmus, quae erunt agenda. Tantum tē

ōrō ut, quoniam mē ipsum semper amāstī, ut eōdem amōre sīs. Ego enim īdem sum; inimīcī meī mea mihi, nōn mē ipsum adēmērunt. Cūrā ut valeās.

Data VIII. Īd. Apr. Thūriīs.

387. In the above letter, we see that the name of the writer, Cicero, instead of being used as the signature as would be the case in English, appears at the beginning and in the nominative case; the name of the one, Atticus, to whom the letter is written, comes next, and is expressed by the dative.

Only with intimate friends is familiarity shown by the use of 'Sal.,' the abbreviated form of **Salūtem.**

More often, even with relatives and friends, we find S. D. (**Salūtem dīcit**), Cicero sends greetings or good wishes to Atticus.

We find no complimentary close, such as "Sincerely yours," "Yours truly," but **Cūrā ut valeās, Fac valeās,** and similar expressions occur. These may express the English "Keep well," "Take care of yourself."

388. The giving of the date seems to depend upon the mood of the writer.

Suppose a letter to be written April 10; this date may be expressed as follows:

(1) **ante diem quārtum Īdus Aprīlēs**; (2) **a. d. iv. Īd. Apr.**; (3) **iv. Īd. Apr.**

389. The word **data**, or **scrīpta**, may or may not be used in connection with the date or place.

At his pleasure, the writer gives, or omits, the place from which his letter is written.

Exercise 52

The battle of Marathon was one of the most important battles in the world's history, for had the Persians been victorious, not only Athens, but the rest of Greece, would have been reduced to a Persian province. Furthermore, the nations of Europe might have been like those of Asia, not free peoples, but the slaves of their conquerors.

Both the Athenians and the Plataeans showed great courage in the presence of the immense Persian army.

After the battle, two thousand Spartans arrived in Athens. They tried to excuse themselves for coming too late, by saying that they would have come earlier if it had been right for them to leave Sparta before the full moon.

If the Spartans had intended to help the Athenians, we cannot but think that they would have sent a much larger army. We can scarcely understand why they did not wish to save Greece.

References: 221; 223; 343; 340; 273; 58; 375; 65; 49; 89; 167.

Exercise 53

Philip of Macedon, the father of Alexander the Great, was exceedingly influential and exceptionally well versed in the art of war, which Epaminondas had taught him when he was a hostage in Thebes.

Although the Greek states differed among themselves, they were all willing to fight, when the opportunity presented itself, against the Persians whom they hated.

All Greece was astir with preparation, and plans had been formed for a joint expedition against Persia, when Philip who had been chosen their leader, was assassinated.

His son, Alexander, who was but twenty years of age, succeeded him. Well did the life of Alexander show that environment has a great deal to do with character.

Alexander used to say to his young friends: "If my father lives much longer, he will leave nothing for me to do. I am not more eager than others for glory, but I shall be glad to show what kind of a commander my father's son will be."

REFERENCES: 56; 77; 259; 75; 195; 52; 16; 220; 90; 189; 169.

EXERCISE 54

Alexander the Great did have a chance, before he had even dared to hope for it, to show what he could do.

It is true that he never spared himself, but his marches were so difficult that neither man nor beast seemed able to stand them.

Whatever there was to be done, he usually did with great eagerness and rapidity. Soldiers felt that they were commanded by one whom nothing could resist.

By the greatest Roman generals Alexander was considered the greatest of all commanders, except Hannibal, the Carthaginian.

In courage, no man ever surpassed Alexander the Great, but when we think of him, not as a soldier, but as a man, it often seems to us that he was not great at all. If he had slaughtered his prisoners only, we could not blame him so much, for that was the custom of the times.

Shall we, however, pardon even a great general when we know that he tortured to death many noble men?

REFERENCES: 167; 210; 90; 62; 368.

Exercise 55

And yet the soldiers of Alexander the Great loved him, and at his death showed even violent grief. Let us always remember that there were many instances of humanity on his part. When he destroyed Thebes, a very renowned city of Greece, he spared the house of the poet Pindar.

An eyewitness has written that before Alexander's death, which occurred at Babylon, when he was less than thirty-two years old, the watches were compelled to open the doors to the soldiers of a hundred battles. These veterans filed sorrowfully past their dying leader.

His body was carried to Alexandria in Egypt, and an immense mausoleum was erected in his honor.

The Mausoleum at Halicarnassus was built to preserve the memory of Mausolus, king of Caria. Its erection, prompted by the love of his wife, Artemisia, has given a name for all magnificent monuments raised in honor of the dead.

References: 20; 273; 77; 365; 52; 92; 58; 39; 289; 287.

Exercise 56

In the year 219 B.C. Hannibal decided that he was well prepared to attack the Romans, and so he began his great war against them. This lasted seventeen years, and the cause of it was as follows:

On the coast of Spain there was a city called Saguntum, which was a colony belonging to the Greeks.

Saguntum was afraid of Carthage and had made a treaty with Rome, so that Rome might be more willing to protect her and might not allow any one to enter her territory without her consent.

This city Hannibal besieged, and the inhabitants withstood the attack bravely. After a siege of eight months, the chief men of the city, knowing that they could not hold out much longer, threw themselves and all their treasures into the flames of a great fire which they had made themselves for this very purpose.

So Saguntum was taken by Hannibal.

REFERENCES: 52; 209; 31; 182.

EXERCISE 57

Because the Carthaginians had besieged Saguntum, a city of Spain, the Romans declared war against them. Hannibal did not intend to wage war on the sea, but with his army he meant to march at once into Italy, and attack the Romans in their own country.

He could not but think that the Gauls, who had lately been conquered by the Romans, would not feel friendly toward them, and would be ready and willing to join him against their conquerors.

Besides, he thought that if he should conquer the Romans in a few battles, all the peoples of Italy would have to surrender.

Things, however, happened contrary to his expectation, for the peoples of Italy not only did not surrender, but even opposed his progress at all times and in all places.

REFERENCES: 12; 76; 48; 374; 275.

EXERCISE 58

It was by no means an easy thing for Hannibal with his army to reach Italy. For, first, he had to cross the Pyrenees Mountains in order to get out of Spain; then he

had to cross the great river Rhone, by no means an easy thing to do, because the river is very swift, and besides, the Gauls on this side of the Alps were trying to keep him from marching through their country; then he had to fight against the opposing Gauls until he reached the Alps; finally, suffering from frost and snow, he had to force his way through the dangerous places on those high mountains.

All this had to be done before he could reach Cisalpine Gaul. Often did his men have an opportunity to show their own fearlessness and their loyalty to him.

Often did both he and they realize how much depended on resolution and perseverance.

REFERENCES: 205; 304; 206; 50; 275; 250; 195; 167.

EXERCISE 59

(It is) because there were so many difficulties (that) Hannibal's march to Italy is famous. The Romans might have attacked him while he was in Transalpine Gaul, and if they had done so, he might not have been able to reach Italy. He marched so much faster than the Romans thought he could march, that they always arrived too late.

It was three days after Hannibal had crossed the Rhone before the Roman army arrived there, so the troops went away and waited for him in Cisalpine Gaul.

He crossed the Rhone very quickly; in two days he got together what boats were necessary to carry his soldiers across. The Gauls stationed themselves on the opposite shore to prevent the landing of his troops. For this reason he sent some of his men to cross the river at night in a place where the Gauls could not see them. With the others, at a given signal, he himself crossed the river.

The Gauls attacked them at once, but, when they heard the shouting in their rear, they were so frightened that they fled.

REFERENCES: 273; 223; 183; 212; 237; 32; 275; 206; 180; 74; 210.

EXERCISE 60

(It was) the beginning of October (when) Hannibal's march over the Alps began, and it lasted fifteen days. Don't forget that he and his men crossed the mountains on foot. It was much more difficult to cross the Alps than the Rhone, for the barbarians were trying to keep him back; and, while he was leading his army through the narrow, dangerous paths, the enemy killed many of his men. The inhabitants kept rolling down great stones upon his troops and kept attacking them from behind, when they were not even suspecting it.

An eyewitness has written that the paths over the slippery ice broke, and many of Hannibal's soldiers fell down the steep sides of the mountain and were killed. You cannot but think that there was need of courage, and you will understand how hard a march it was, if you keep in mind the fact that, when Hannibal crossed the Rhone, he had an army of fifty-nine thousand men, and when he reached the foot of the Alps, his army consisted of scarcely twenty-six thousand men.

REFERENCES: 52; 178; 181; 271; 305; 220; 167; 182; 237; 33.

EXERCISE 61

Caius Julius Caesar was born in Rome, July 12, 100 B.C. Had it not been for his uncle, C. Marius, he might not have

been made a priest of Jupiter when he was only fourteen years old. Then, L. Cornelius Sulla would have had him put to death, if he had not had so many influential friends. Finally, if Caesar had died at forty years of age, he would be remembered as a leading statesman, but not a famous general, or even a brave soldier. For (it was) after this (that) he became both general and historian, famous at home and in the field, on land and on sea.

He was the first deified Roman about whom historians have written. If you would know him as a historian, read his "Commentaries on the Gallic War," which are so accurately written that they have been commended in all ages.

It is not to be supposed, however, that one person can please everybody, yet it would take a long time to tell even a part of the good things that have been written about Caesar.

REFERENCES: 355; 358; 362; 39; 223; 227; 52; 198; 62; 76; 273; 210.

EXERCISE 62

Among the many things written about Caius Julius Caesar, we find the following:

At the age of twenty-seven he was elected pontiff; at thirty-two, quaestor; at thirty-five, aedile; at thirty-seven, grand pontiff; at thirty-eight, praetor; at forty, consul.

He set out for Gaul in 58 B.C. During the next nine years he was occupied in subduing Gaul. Twice he crossed the Rhine, twice he landed in Britain, a territory up to this time unknown to the Romans.

All who were in his army knew that they had to obey at all times. For this reason many things could be done very quickly. Under his direction, it took only a few hours

to fortify a camp. In seven days his soldiers bridged the Rhine, and in thirty days they built a fleet of twenty warships. When a thing was to be done, no obstacle could stop him.

When he knew that any one of his soldiers was well fitted to do what he wished done, he chose him, not caring a straw who the soldier was.

REFERENCES: 112; 52; 21, 2; 362; 199; 50; 69; 180; 74; 146; 34; 167.

EXERCISE 63

No general was ever more loved by his soldiers than Caesar was. He had every confidence in, and was very careful of them, and they all felt sure that if they deserved praise, they would get it, for he usually remembered what he saw his men do and what he heard that they had done.

To his enemies, on the other hand, he was very cruel, and seldom did he forget or forgive an injury. (It was) for this reason (that) when the senate had voted for a thanksgiving of twenty days in Caesar's honor, Cato announced that he had voted against it.

After a war was over, Caesar usually treated with great honor the states which had acknowledged his authority, and upon their chiefs bestowed valuable presents.

Cicero says that no one of Caesar's many virtues was more to be admired than his goodness and mercy toward those whom he had conquered.

REFERENCES: 16; 374; 183; 48; 36; 31; 365; 67.

EXERCISE 64

Caesar once seized a panic-stricken standard-bearer who was about to desert, turned him around, and telling him

that he had mistaken the direction of the enemy, spoke as follows:

"What is the meaning of this? Of what are you afraid? I do not wish to be too hard upon you, but you seem to be afraid of even the least sounds. Running away seems to you much easier than fighting. You know better how to carry a standard before, than after, the beginning of a battle. I am surprised to see a Roman standard-bearer run away.

"To sum up in very few words, let me give you this advice: Be sure to guard the standard which should be much dearer to you than life, and always remember that a brave man may fall, but he will not desert.

"Remember also that it will be an honor for you to have done your best.

"Either conquer or die."

REFERENCES: 112; 179; 289, 3 and 5; 189; 273; 55; 173; 67; 273; 175; 332.

EXERCISE 65

Once upon a time, when Caesar was dining at a friend's house, he noticed that the rest of the guests, thinking the oil too rancid, refused it. He, however, to spare his entertainer's feelings, took it without any hesitation.

When on a journey through a forest with his friend Oppius, he came one night to a little hut, where there happened to be but one bed. As Oppius was not well, Caesar said, jokingly, that he preferred to sleep on the ground, since it was worth more than the bed.

One could never tell what Caesar intended to do. When on one occasion he was defending a young Numidian, King

Juba came to Rome, bringing with him money with which to influence the judges. Learning this, Caesar approached him, and seizing him by the beard, said, "I do not doubt that in your country gold has great weight, and that there you are monarch of all you survey, but it's high time for you to learn that you cannot bribe a Roman judge."

REFERENCES: 12; 62; 183; 76; 91; 302; 168; 206; 58; 286, 9; 276.

EXERCISE 66

When Cicero assembled the senate in the temple of Jupiter Stator, November 7, 63 B.C., there was an unusually large attendance. Everybody was surprised at the place and the time of the meeting. (Meetings were not usually held so late in the day.)

Among the senators came Catiline, not at all alarmed by the watchmen, the guards, the crowds of people, or the armed knights, who had surrounded the senate. As soon as he took his usual seat, the rest of the senators arose and left their seats.

After Cicero had again and again advised him to leave the city, Catiline, attempting to defend himself, begged the senators not to believe anything against him, but they would not listen to him.

That very night he left the city, and although his friends circulated the report that he had gone into exile at Massilia, there were some who believed that he had gone to Faesulae to join Manlius.

REFERENCES: 355; 358; 362; 298; 55; 240–243; 206; 268; 78; 259; 58.

Exercise 67

The next day Cicero delivered an address to the people. He let them know what was going on both in the city and out of it.

There happened to be at this time in Rome ambassadors of the Allobroges, a Gallic people, whose country lay between the Rhone and the Alps. They had come to complain of the cruelty of the Roman governors.

When they were starting for their homes, Lentulus met them, and promised them assistance if they would send cavalry to Catiline. Although these people were by no means kindly disposed toward the Romans, they decided to consult their patron, Quintus Fabius Sanga. It was through him that Cicero learned everything that the Gauls had told him.

On the night of December 2, 63 B.C., these ambassadors left Rome, and they had in their possession letters which proved, not their own ruin, but that of the conspirators.

References: 78; 167; 213; 202; 185; 220; 374; 259; 72; 44; 355; 357; 362; 291; 49.

Exercise 68

By a previously arranged plan, the ambassadors of the Allobroges, who had come to the Flaminian way, where it crosses the Tiber by way of the Mulvian bridge, were arrested about midnight, as soon as they began to step on the bridge. The praetors who had come to the assistance of Cicero were willing to do what he thought best. For this reason they pretended violence so that no one might suspect the Allobroges. The leaders of the conspiracy were arrested, and the evidence was such that they dared not deny anything.

The senate ordered rewards to be given to the Allobroges, and the conspirators to be held in custody, and other arrests to be made as soon as possible.

The effect of Cicero's speech upon the people was wonderful. Many who had refused to believe Catiline a public enemy now opposed his return to the city.

REFERENCES: 287; 268; 291; 275; 182; 16.

EXERCISE 69

When I behold the extraordinary safeguard of armed soldiers resorted to, no doubt for the preservation of the state; when I catch, as I cannot but do, the throb of public anxiety which beats from one end to the other of the forum; when I reflect on what may be the fate of our city and country, — it seems to me that I never rose in a court of justice with so much embarrassment as on this occasion.

I feel, fellow-citizens, that you are as much troubled as I am, and I call upon you in the name of the immortal gods to give peace to us all, by a speedy verdict of conviction, if you find the defendants guilty, or by a speedy verdict of acquittal, if you think them innocent.

SUGGESTIONS

The following is given to show the order in which the above exercise may be rendered in Latin:

Beholding (dative singular), fellow-citizens, this guard of armed men, which no one can doubt has been summoned (276) to protect (49) the state; feeling (it is not possible for me not to feel it) how much the mind of each one (156, 4) of you (104) is troubled (181); reflecting in how

great danger the state is (167), — I seem to myself never before to have risen with like disturbance of mind to make (197) a speech in court.

Of (**ab**) you, fellow-citizens, who in my opinion indeed are disturbed by not less anxiety, I demand that by (**per**) the immortal gods, either by convicting (199) these men, if you find that they are to be blamed, or (332) if they are innocent, by acquitting (199) them, you restore (206) peace to the Roman people.

It is not possible for me not to feel it, **nōn potest fierī mē nōn sentīre.**

Exercise 70

The punishment of the conspirators was now to be determined upon. Cicero, therefore, summoned the senate on the 5th of December, to decide what action was to be taken.

Some of the senators favored imprisonment for life; others, capital punishment. When Cicero declared that the conspirators were public enemies, not citizens, his friends, fearing that he was in danger, crowded around him and implored him to think of his own safety. He, on the other hand, urged them to consider the interests of the state and to take no thought for his safety.

Cato was the last of the senators to speak, and the result of his speech was that the minds of many were completely changed, and the five leaders of the conspiracy were killed that very night. It makes us shudder to think that they were hurled down into the darkness of the great sewer which flows under the Tullianum, the dark, frightful, underground prison of the Romans.

After this, not only did no others join Catiline, but even his friends one by one seemed to desert him. This did

not prevent his trying to raise an army. The next year he was killed in a battle in Etruria.

REFERENCES: 350; 361; 206; 167; 274; 278; 340; 44; 189; 213; 78; 183; 275.

EXERCISE 71

In the year 81 B.C., after Sulla's conquest of Mithridates, he claimed for himself the surname Felix, as he felt that he owed his success to the gods.

Everybody in Rome looked upon him as a master. He used to say that there never had been, and there never would be, many Sullas. A gilt equestrian statue with the inscription, "To Cornelius Sulla, the Fortunate Commander," was erected in his honor, before the rostra.

On his return to Italy, he left Murena with two legions in Asia. The latter was eager for glory himself, and pretended that Mithridates had not withdrawn from Cappadocia. He, therefore, not only marched into this place, but even laid waste the fields of Pontus.

At this time Mithridates was not prepared to fight, and the result was that he offered no opposition to the progress of Murena.

REFERENCES: 362; 246; 62; 183; 19; 16; 10; 123; 127; 210; 275.

EXERCISE 72

Early in the spring, Murena decided to oppose Mithridates by force, and for this reason he assembled a large army. With difficulty, however, did he effect a retreat from Pontus, and after this Mithridates quickly overran the whole of Cappadocia.

Not long afterwards, Gabinius arrived in Asia with orders from Sulla to Murena to desist from hostilities.

Although Sulla had recalled Murena, and had sent Gabinius to defend the Roman interests in Asia, Mithridates knew that it was he himself who was an especial object of hatred to the Romans.

Therefore, since he distrusted the Romans and both feared their legions and feared for his own troops, Mithridates decided to raise an army that would be an honor to himself and his country.

REFERENCES: 95; 74; 210; 259; 206; 197; 181; 49; 44.

EXERCISE 73

In Bithynia, a state adjacent to Pontus, things of a different character were going on. After the death of Nicomedes III, who had been very friendly to the Roman people, and who may have been persuaded to leave his kingdom to them, Bithynia was declared a Roman province. This was the cause of the war that had so long seemed to be inevitable.

Mithridates, who now had an army of one hundred and twenty thousand foot soldiers and sixteen thousand horsemen, and a fleet that greatly surpassed that of the Romans, was well prepared to oppose them. He sent word that he would declare war against the Romans if they did not restore Bithynia to the son of Nicomedes.

Learning this, the Romans thought it expedient to send both consuls, Lucius Licinius Lucullus and Marcus Aurelius Cotta, with a large army into Asia.

On their departure from Rome, they received orders to spare no one, and because of this order no one was spared.

REFERENCES: 273; 43; 206; 374; 286, 9; 16; 65; 43.

Exercise 74

Neither Lucullus nor Cotta seemed able to oppose Mithridates, who marched through almost the whole of Bithynia without encountering any resistance.

In the first battle, the legions under the command of Cotta were conquered, the ships were sunk, and very few of the Romans were spared by Mithridates.

Now both by sea and land he attacked Cyzicus, a city of Asia friendly to the Romans.

Lucullus, who had been in Phrygia, seeing that it was of great importance to him and Cotta for their forces to be united, followed Mithridates to Cyzicus, where he cut him off from supplies by land, while the winter storms prevented his getting supplies by sea.

Since all hope of taking the city was out of the question, Mithridates thought it wise not to oppose any longer a general of such perseverance and wisdom. So, after losing great numbers of troops, he started for Pontus. When he arrived here, he had no means of opposing Lucullus, who, at that time, was in close pursuit.

References: 74; 43; 286, 9; 38; 275; 195.

Exercise 75

Again and again was Mithridates defeated, and finally, he fled to Armenia. At that time, Tigranes, his son-in-law, was the most powerful king of Asia, but he thought it expedient not to make war openly against the Romans; on this account, although he received Mithridates into his kingdom, he refused to admit him into his presence, and he did not even attempt his restoration.

When Appius Claudius, who in the name of Lucullus

had come to demand the surrender of Mithridates, had acted very insolently, not only did Tigranes refuse to give him up, but now gave him a royal reception.

Meanwhile Lucullus had brought upon himself the enmity of the equites, the farmers of the revenue, whom he had charged with avarice. Because of the complaints of this class, he was afterwards recalled.

REFERENCES: 33; 275; 305; 16; 12; 206; 35; 74.

EXERCISE 76

Tigranes now felt that it was worth his while to consult Mithridates and make him a participant in his plans. Contrary to the advice of Mithridates, Tigranes attacked Lucullus at Tigranocerta and was defeated with great loss. After this, Tigranes did not hesitate to give to the king of Pontus the command of the whole war.

In the following summer, Lucullus marched into the heart of Armenia, and again defeated the combined forces of the two kings near Artaxata.

On account of the extreme cold at this season, there were many deaths among the Roman troops. This and the homesickness of the soldiers made the farther advance of the Roman general impossible, and so he turned aside into Mesopotamia.

Meanwhile, he intrusted the defense of Pontus to Fabius, his lieutenant. Both he and Triarius, a Roman general, were routed and many of their soldiers killed.

The Romans began to think that, although Asia was a Roman province, they would never be able to lead a secure life there.

REFERENCES: 183; 38; 44; 39; 276; 198; 54.

Exercise 77

The troops of Lucullus were so influenced by Clodius, his personal enemy, and by reports from friends at home that Lucullus did not accomplish anything. Need we say that into Pontus and Cappadocia the two kings soon marched?

The country which Lucullus had conquered was again in the hands of the enemy, and by a decree of the senate, the province of Bithynia and the command against Mithridates were transferred to Glabrio, the consul.

On his arrival in Bithynia, he made no attempt to assume the command of the army, but remained in his province and refused to accept the troops from Lucullus.

The Romans soon realized that they had made a great mistake in appointing Glabrio, for, although they considered him well versed in politics, they feared that he was not prepared to manage so great a war.

The result of this was that many felt sorry that Lucullus had been recalled.

The following year Lucullus resigned his command, and Pompey, who just a short time before had conquered the pirates, took charge of the army.

References: 210; 268; 368; 16; 275; 199; 274; 37.

Exercise 78

A friend of Cicero has written the following:

"Lucullus and Pompey, it is true, differ from each other in many respects.

"We all feel that each one of these has done his best. Of what, then, should the former be ashamed? No one can blame him, as it was the battle between Mithridates

and Triarius that seemed to paralyze the Roman troops. He did not know that the day was near at hand on which he would have to give up his army to Glabrio. If he had remained in Asia, there is no doubt that he might have been able to remedy matters in some measure. He was not far from Sinope, the capital of Pontus, when he was recalled.

"We have great faith in both Lucullus and Pompey. That the senate has recalled the former is a cause of general sorrow.

"People say that some senators regret that action, but that is now too late.

"Let us, therefore, if in any way it can be done, make use of the latter. The gods themselves seem to have sent him to us at this very time. The enemy are frightened by the mere mention of his name. Will any one at such a time as this say anything about precedents? Remember that laws are silent, so to speak, amid the clashing of arms, and that then it is intellect rather than bodily strength that counts."

REFERENCES: 105; 155; 37; 229; 273; 145; 79; 127; 148; 175; 154.

EXERCISE 79

An historian writes the following about Lucullus: "In my opinion, Lucullus is a general worthy of great honor, although he has been recalled, a fact of which each one of you is aware.

"It seems to me that his own soldiers are the very ones who have taken away the command from him. Some of these have deserted the army on account of homesickness, others on account of envy.

"We all know that the envious usually make their attacks upon the noblest and best.

"(It was) at the very time at which he was showing himself superior to all the rest of the generals who had been sent against Mithridates and the other powerful kings of Asia, (that) he was recalled.

"Now, since the fortunes of us all are at stake, we ought to make use of our best generals as long as they live. Therefore let us send Cneius Pompey to Asia to protect our colonists and our interests there."

REFERENCES: 112; 140; 156, 6; 127; 137; 79; 206; 49.

EXERCISE 80

The same historian writes the following about Pompey: "If anybody in the world has always been exceptionally successful, Pompey has been. No one doubts that he should be chosen commander at once.

"There have been Roman generals who, mindful of themselves and forgetful of us, have not only been willing to sell offices, but have really done so. Do you not think that the qualities desired in a general, especially at such a time as this, are valor, honesty, and uprightness, not glibness of tongue or knowledge of the arts and sciences?

"Your countenances are, in a way, silent speeches, and your murmurs of approval show that you all know such a man.

"Whatever he undertakes, the gods willing, he will accomplish, for not only theoretical knowledge, but practical experience also, is necessary in a consummate commander."

REFERENCES: 147; 276; 103; 128; 154; 151; 220; 74; 18; 331.

Exercise 81

As Cicero has written almost all that is known of Aulus Gabinius Archias, you may say on his authority that Archias was a man with a long line of ancestry, and that when a young man he left his home to travel in the rest of Asia and in Greece. He says, "in the rest of Asia," for Archias was born in Antioch, once a bustling town of Syria.

In those days it often happened that a young man was received as a son or friend into the home of a distinguished Roman. If you would know whether this was done in later years, read the life of the author of "Utopia."

We feel sure that if Archias had not come to Rome in 102 B.C., he could not have accompanied Lucius Lucullus to Sicily.

The purpose of this journey is not known, but it is known that while Archias was at Heraclea he was made a citizen of that city.

References: 62; 273; 74; 181; 76; 206; 95; 39; 170; 229; 362; 181.

Exercise 82

Gentlemen of the jury, since Gratius has at considerable length offered to you various conjectures as to my line of defense, perhaps it may be as well that I should take the liberty of stating to you what really is the defendant's case, and that you should know from me myself what I hope to prove.

Since Gratius has indulged in so many remarks upon what I do not intend to say, I should like to offer a single observation on what he has said.

First, however, I should like to ask if any one of you ever before this day saw a prosecuting attorney who stated his case with greater care than the gentleman before whom we appear.

I thank him most heartily for what he has said, and I know that I shall make you feel that so unusual a case has demanded an unusual course of procedure.

SUGGESTIONS

The following arrangement of the above exercise will suggest the order for the Latin translation:

Since Gratius, gentlemen of the jury, with many words has expressed to you many conjectures (as to) how (159) I intend to defend (167) this case, perhaps it will not be foreign (to the matter) if I in reply lay before you the real case of the defendant, so that you may hear from me myself (127) the things which I hope to prove (185; 189). Since, however, Gratius has made (252) so many statements about (dē) those things which I do not intend to say, I should like to touch upon one of these.

First, however, I wish to ask if any one (145) of you (104) ever before this day heard (169) a judge state a case with greater care (70) than he who presides over this court at this time has done.

To him I give the greatest thanks because he has said this, and I know that I shall make (183) you feel (210) that I, compelled by the unusual difficulties of the case, have made use of (183) an unusual kind of pleading (195).

Exercise 83

It may have been Marcus Lucullus with whom Archias went to Sicily. There is no doubt that after leaving Sicily

Lucullus went to Heraclea and was living here when Archias was admitted to citizenship.

Cicero does not say why Gratius opposed the citizenship of Archias. Possibly he, a man entirely unknown in other respects, was urged on by the friends of Pompey, whom Lucullus had defeated the year before.

It was not difficult to prove that Archias was a Roman citizen. Cicero accordingly devoted much of his time to the praise of poets and other learned men, and he had a good chance to show his own ability as an orator.

If you would like to know the real tendency of Cicero's talent, read first the fourth oration against Catiline, then the speech for Murena, delivered about the same time, for Cicero has written no more agreeable speech.

REFERENCES: 273; 310; 276; 169; 275; 179.

EXERCISE 84

Marcus Antonius never forgave Cicero for the attacks he had made upon him in his Philippics, and so it does not seem strange that he wished to get rid of him.

It is not to be supposed that Octavianus Caesar, another of the triumvirs, would spare his uncle's bitterest enemy. There is no doubt that for this reason Cicero was among those to be put to death at once by order of the triumvirs.

This news reached him at Tusculum. He fled to Antium, hoping to sail from that place, but adverse winds prevented his escape. Disappointed in this hope, he went to his villa and remained there until the soldiers of the triumvirs came. His slaves were very loyal to him and were ready to defend him faithfully and fearlessly, but at his order they placed him in his litter and carried him to the seashore, a mile away.

With difficulty did Cicero prevent his slaves from attacking the enemies who had overtaken them. He was murdered near Formiae, December 7, 43 B.C., in the sixty-fourth year of his age. His head and his hands were taken to Rome and by order of Antony were placed in the rostra, so that he might see, I presume, that Cicero was no longer to be feared.

REFERENCES: 58; 275; 250; 358; 362; 52; 206.

EXERCISE 85

Virgil belongs to the class of poets who put the man first and nature afterward. He was born in Andes, a village about three miles from Mantua, a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

His father, though not a millionaire, was by no means a poor man. Publius Virgilius Maro even as a child was not strong, and so, when a young fellow, he often went away from home for the winter on account of the cold in Mantua.

At thirty he became a favorite of Augustus and of Maecenas. Although he owned a house in Rome, next to the palace of Maecenas, it was very often unoccupied. He used to say that Rome was such a crowded city, he could not find there a place in which to write.

Calm and silence were indispensable to him. He was very fond of Campania and of Sicily, and he tells us himself that (it was) in Sicily (that) a great part of the "Aeneid" was written.

REFERENCES: 33; 77; 210; 49.

EXERCISE 86

A few months before his death, Virgil went to Greece, where he intended to spend two years in perfecting the "Aeneid," which he considered his greatest work.

He met Augustus in Athens and was persuaded to return with him to Italy. A few days after reaching Brundisium he died, and was buried in Naples, a beautiful city of Italy.

On his deathbed, Virgil asked that his last poem be brought to him, so that with his own hands he might throw it into the flames. He died, however, without doing this, but provision was made in his will for the destruction of this work.

Augustus would not allow this, but he gave orders to two of Virgil's friends, Varius and Tucca, to make the necessary corrections, but no additions.

This was a work requiring the greatest care, and both Varius and Tucca said repeatedly that, although they were willing to do this for Virgil's sake, they were sorry that he had not lived longer, since only Virgil himself could give the finishing touches to his great poem.

REFERENCES: 60; 199; 286, 9; 43; 206; 77; 200; 16; 268.

EXERCISE 87

There are many ways in which one may become famous. Paris, 'tis true, was a prince, son of the noble Priam, but (it is) not for this reason (that) he is so well known.

After he had rendered his verdict, that Venus was the most beautiful of all the goddesses, he started under her guidance for Greece, where he was received with great honor by Menelaus, king of Sparta. Notwithstanding this, he had no hesitancy in violating every divine obligation. For, not long after, he persuaded Helen, the wife of Menelaus, his host, who had treated him with especial kindness, to elope with him.

The noblest of the Greek chieftains had been suitors of

Helen before her marriage with Menelaus, but this did not prevent their making a solemn promise to defend her, even at their own risk, if any one should ever try to take her away from her husband.

REFERENCES: 273; 210; 74; 60; 206; 275; 183; 145.

EXERCISE 88

Menelaus now called upon them to fulfill their pledge. For months preparations went on throughout the whole of Greece, and thus it came about that the Greeks, under the leadership of Agamemnon, with the mighty fleet which they had built, started for Troy.

When the Trojans were informed of their departure, they felt that something must be done at once to avert the impending danger.

Accordingly they chose as their leaders the valiant Hector and Aeneas, son of Venus and Anchises, one of whom excelled in wisdom and courage, the other surpassed in strength and beauty. Hector tried to persuade his brother, Paris, to restore Helen to her husband, Menelaus, but his efforts were unavailing.

Among the chieftains of the Greeks were Agamemnon, brother of Menelaus; Achilles, their most illustrious warrior; Ajax, mighty in stature and courage; Diomedes, scarcely inferior to Achilles; Ulysses, a very shrewd and crafty fellow.

REFERENCES: 206; 16; 75; 74; 152; 83.

EXERCISE 89

After a siege of ten years Troy was taken through a scheme suggested by the crafty Ulysses.

The Trojans had learned that the Greeks intended to leave Troy. Thinking that they had all gone, the Trojans

were sleeping so soundly that nothing prevented the Greeks in the dead of night from entering and capturing the city.

It remains to be said that nearly all of the Trojans were either killed or made prisoners. Aeneas, with his father, Anchises, his little son, Ascanius, and a few companions, made his escape from the burning city, built twenty ships out of timber from the forests of Mt. Ida, and started in search of an unknown but divinely appointed home.

Was not so wise, so pious a hero, the son of Venus, the favorite of the Olympian gods, most worthy to be the founder of Lavinium, a holy city?

If you would know more about this great man, read the "Aeneid," than which no other poem is more celebrated.

REFERENCES: 287; 98; 268; 275; 95; 332; 157; 273.

EXERCISE 90

It would be pleasant to accompany Aeneas from Troy to Laurentum by way of Thrace, Delos, Crete, and Epirus, stopping at Carthage long enough to find out whether Dido was kind to strangers or not.

If Aeneas were to advertise to-day a personally conducted excursion of this kind, we have no doubt that many would be glad to accompany him.

Would that we could go! Everybody, however, has neither the leisure nor the means to undertake so long a trip. Furthermore, many of these ports and islands are for Aeneas merely places which he touches, and of so little importance to Virgil that he has not taken the trouble to describe them. Even of Africa he does not say much, although his hero remains here all winter. This is not the true country of the "Aeneid." The places best

known and best loved by Virgil are Sicily and Italy, whither he likes to lead his hero, Aeneas, and where he himself is glad to rest.

REFERENCES: 65; 58; 77; 171; 228; 189; 128; 273; 340; 34; 210; 259; 52.

EXERCISE 91

Tradition asserts that Mt. Olympus, situated on the coast of Thessaly, and extending six thousand feet in height, was the home of the gods. On the summit of the mountain was the palace of Jupiter, where he as king sat upon his throne. Each of the gods had his own dwelling, but at the summons of Jupiter they assembled daily in his palace.

Here they passed judgment upon the affairs of both gods and men, feasting meanwhile upon ambrosia and nectar served by the lovely Hebe, and listening to Apollo, who played, and the Muses, who sang for them. At sunset they retired each to his own home.

Tradition asserts also that it was (the business) of the goddesses to name the seasons and to guard the gate through which the Celestials passed from heaven to earth.

REFERENCES: 16; 53; 95; 62; 45; 155; 58.

EXERCISE 92

The ancient Greeks and Romans believed that there was a place for punishment after death, called Tartarus. This was supposed to be under ground, near Lake Avernus, and the entrance to it was guarded by Cerberus, lying at full length; the way to it was barred by the river Styx. It was regarded as the prison of the gods. The Titans, when con-

quered, were shut up there, and Jupiter often threatened the gods themselves with banishment to its gloomy regions.

Every evening Mercury brought the spirits of those who had died during the day to the shore of the river Styx, where Charon stood ready to ferry them across, if all the conditions had been fulfilled.

They then appeared before the judges, Minos and Rhadamanthus, who ordered the good sent by one road to the fields of Elysium, and the wicked by the other road to the prison of Tartarus, to receive punishment worthy of their crimes.

Before they were sent to Elysium, the good drank of the water of Lethe, to produce forgetfulness of the sorrows of this life.

REFERENCES: 182; 62; 16; 155; 83; 206; 244; 245.

EXERCISE 93

Charon, son of Erebus and Nox, was one of the gods of the lower world. His office was to carry the dead over the river Styx to Pluto's realms.

At burial, an obolus, the amount which Charon demanded of each one whom he took across in his boat, was placed in the mouth of the dead person. Those who had been drowned, or had been unable to pay an obolus, or had, for any reason, been deprived of burial, were compelled to wander about the banks of the Styx for a century before they were allowed to cross the river.

No living person was allowed to cross the river unless he had sought for, and found, a golden bough, the especial gift for beautiful Proserpina. Deiphobe, the Cumaean Sibyl, pointed out to an inquirer how and where to look for this golden bough. When this was found it was shown

to Charon, the boatman, whom the poets represent as a rough-looking old man, who holds in his hand a long pole for the guidance of his boat.

REFERENCES: 312; 49; 179; 138; 56; 52; 16.

EXERCISE 94

Cerberus, the famous dog of the lower world, is represented opening his three mouths and making the realms of Pluto resound with his barking. He guards the entrance to Tartarus, the regions of the dead, so that very few dare to approach.

Those who wished to go down to Avernus he did not try to keep away, but he seized and devoured those attempting to return. When loosed from his hundred chains even the Furies could not tame him, but Orpheus lulled him to sleep with his lyre, and in his twelfth and last labor Hercules subdued him.

When Hercules asked Pluto's permission to lead Cerberus to the upper world, Pluto granted it on condition that he could do this without using weapons.

In spite of the monster's struggles, Hercules accomplished the feat, exhibited him to wondering mortals, and then led him back to Pluto's realms.

REFERENCES: 210; 214; 180; 206; 200.

EXERCISE 95

Laocoön, a Trojan hero, was a priest of Neptune, who tried to keep his countrymen from leading into the city the immense horse built by the Greeks with Minerva's aid. He was no ordinary man, and there is no doubt that the crafty Ulysses was known to him, and that he suspected

that there was some trick on his part. When Laocoön had run down from his temple and had heard Thymoetes advising his fellow-citizens to lead the horse into the city, he called out, "I fear Greeks even when they offer us gifts," an expression which has become proverbial.

The Trojans had been informed by a prophet that if they gained possession of this horse, they would conquer the Greeks. Laocoön, however, did not believe this, and, rushing forward, he hurled his mighty spear into the side of the monstrous horse.

On this account, Minerva sent two enormous serpents from the sea to destroy Laocoön and his two little sons. The Trojans felt that the gods had punished Laocoön deservedly, because he had dared to strike the horse sacred to Minerva.

Among the famous and wonderful groups of statuary in the Vatican may now be seen that of Laocoön and his two little sons.

REFERENCES: 275; 276; 206; 96; 374; 69; 182; 131; 273.

EXERCISE 96

On the 13th of August, my dear friend, I received from you three letters; the first, written July 4; the second, July 15; the third, July 25.

I am grateful to you for your many acts of kindness and hope that some day I can requite you as you deserve.

I cannot understand why those very ones by whom I was once envied have been saved, and why they are trying to take away from me not life but honor. What do they mean? Why am I an object of hatred to them?

Once in a while, I do think that the tribunes are not all hostile to me, and that they will come to my aid. Then I

shall return to Rome, to my friend T. Pomponius, whose surname is Atticus. This friend of mine was the first Roman who dared to say openly that the arts of Greece were pleasing to him. I am glad, however, that his Roman friend is much dearer to him than his Greek friends.

When will you come to Thessalonica? I shall not be wholly wretched if you are with me. Do please come. Keep well.

THESSALONICA, August 15, 58 B.C.

REFERENCES: 361; 357; 359; 20; 62, 8; 180; 43; 167; 49; 58; 45; 89; 220; 177; 387; 362.

EXERCISE 97

DYRRACHIUM, Nov. 26, 58 B.C.

Tullius sends greetings to his Terentia. Would that you and my brother Quintus were friends, or rather, not enemies! It always seems to be "tit for tat" between you. There are so few of us, that I should be very glad if we could all live under the same roof. I am not blaming you alone, for my brother is by no means of a mild or peaceable disposition.

What are we to do? What is to become of our boy, Marcus? Surely, I have been deserted both by friends and by fortune. Who is there who does not know that (it was) Cicero (who) saved our country when Catiline was trying to destroy it? True, I had to shape my course to circumstances, but why should I be ashamed? Those who keep saying that I acted tyrannically have either forgotten, or do not know, why consuls are so named.

(It is) for this reason, because it is (the duty) of the consul both to consult the senate, and to consult for the interest

of the state. This I as consul did, because all that I did was by the advice of the senate, and from love of country.

Are they not glad that the city is rid of those desperadoes?

I cannot write more because of my tears. At any rate, I think that the facts in the case will have more weight than tears. Let me know what is going on and how you are. Remember me to Atticus and take good care of Marcus.

REFERENCES: 387; 273; 210; 72; 37; 33; 44; 62; 314; 177; 158; 167.

EXERCISE 98

MY DEAR ATTICUS:

Do not imagine that I shall forget Clodius, of whom you spoke in your letter of December 10. How can I ever forget that scoundrel? He accuse sensible and respectable men of disloyalty? I wonder whether he repents of that or not.

Life is full of sorrows, which I must bear bravely for the sake of my wife and children. Where in the world are they? News has reached me that our house has been burned, and I am sure that they have not enough money with which to buy another, even at a low price.

I am tired of life, and yet I ought to hope, for it is the duty of the tribunes to decide whether I am to remain in exile or return to Rome.

In one of your late letters, you asked if they were friendly to me. I do not know, for one writes one thing, another, another, but now it looks that way. It is of great importance to my wife and myself that Milo be friendly to us.

If I have not thanked you for the many things you have done, rest assured that I do feel grateful to you for your many favors.

Take good care of yourself.

REFERENCES: 178; 36; 358; 368; 161; 35; 37; 171; 50; 206; 73; 273; 170; 83; 38; 175; 132; 387.

EXERCISE 99

THESSALONICA, Jan. 13, 57 B.C.

Six years ago, my dear Atticus, all in Rome called Cicero the father of his country. Now the same Cicero, at forty-nine years of age, is many miles from his home. Will he ever return home and move back into his own house?

You will understand that I do grieve at my fate.

What are those who asked aid of me when I was consul, doing? I must confess that I have my doubts about them, for I have written to them repeatedly, but they have not answered. I do not intend to conceal anything from you, for all our hopes are centered in you, and you say that we can depend upon the new tribunes, since they did not bring this accusation against me.

I have every confidence in you, and I hope that they will keep their promise. And yet — one can never tell, for "'Twixt cup and lip there's many a slip."

From Thessalonica I intend to go to Dyrrachium as soon as possible.

Is there any news? Some one is waiting for this letter. Good-by. Don't forget that to your keeping I commit my little son.

REFERENCES: 60; 52; 164; 59; 56; 16; 302; 158; 177; 178.

Exercise 100

My dear Terentia:

For more than thirteen months have I been away from home, and from you who are much dearer to me than my life. And yet—I should not say this, since life of this kind is not worth very much.

From many letters, my dearest Terentia, I learn that you are a woman of wonderful firmness of character and exceptional endurance, and that you can be firm or gentle, as occasion requires. This, however, does not seem strange to me.

You surely have a good chance nowadays to show your remarkable endurance. Do take care of yourself. News has reached me that you have been ill. If you are well, my troubles will not seem so great.

Plaucius has been very friendly to me, and has asked me to spend a few days with himself and his friends in the country for the sake of amusement. Although I have been there twice in the course of a month, I shall be glad to go, for Plaucius is always the same.

I intended to go to Epirus, but Plaucius is not willing for me to go there. He has heard that I am to be recalled soon, but "Hearsay is no evidence."

It seems scarcely necessary to exhort both you and my darling Tullia to keep up your courage.

Really, it seems to be all over with me. Good-by. God bless you.

Would that I were with you!

May 12, 57 B.C.

References: 52; 92; 89; 67; 34; 72; 16; 220; 259; 189; 190; 316; 177; 232; 310.

QUOTATIONS

Latin quotations presenting in order Nouns, Verbs, Adjectives, Adverbs, Pronouns, and Numerals have been here introduced for the purpose of reviewing *forms*, a knowledge of which is essential to work in Prose Composition.

The English quotations accompanying these are not to be considered translations, but in many cases they seem to be suggested by the Latin.

Nouns

1–2	First Declension
3–10	Second Declension
11–22	Third Declension
23–26	Fourth Declension
27–28	Fifth Declension

Verbs

29	First Conjugation
30	Second Conjugation
31	Third Conjugation
32	Fourth Conjugation
33–43	Irregular
44–48	Deponent
49–52	Semi-deponent
53	Frequentative
54	Inceptive
55–57	Defective
58–63	Impersonal

ADJECTIVES

64–65 Declension and Comparison of *us* adjectives of the First and Second Declension
66–71 Declension of irregular *us* adjectives of the First and Second Declension
72–73 Declension and Comparison of *er* adjectives of the First and Second Declension
74–76 Declension of irregular *er* adjectives of the First and Second Declension
77–78 Declension and Comparison of *er* adjectives of the Third Declension
79 Declension and Comparison of *is* adjectives of the Third Declension
80 Declension and Comparison of *ns* adjectives of the Third Declension
81 Declension and Comparison of *vetus*
82–85 Declension and Comparison of adjectives ending in *x*
86–103 Irregular Comparisons
104–113 Comparison of Adverbs

PRONOUNS

114–116 Personal and Reflexive
117–120 Possessive
121–123 Demonstrative
124 The Determinative
125 The Intensive
126 The Pronoun of Identity
127 The Relative *qui*
128 The Interrogative *quis*
129–141 Indefinite

NUMERALS

142–144

1. *Memoria* est thesaurus omnium rērum. — CICERO.

   Memory, the warder of the brain. — SHAKESPEARE.

2. Vēra incessū patuit *dea*. — VIRGIL.

   She moves a goddess, and she looks a queen. — POPE.

3. *Amīcus* certus in rē incertā cernitur. — ENNIUS.

   A friend i' the court is better than a penny in purse. — SHAKESPEARE.

4. Est *deus* in nōbīs. — OVID.

   There's a divinity that shapes our ends,
   Rough-hew them how we will. — SHAKESPEARE.

5. Scinditur incertum studia in contrāria *vulgus*. — VIRGIL.

   As many men, so many minds.

6. Dulce est dēsipere in *locō*. — HORACE.

   A little nonsense now and then
   Is relished by the wisest men.

7. Macte novā virtūte, *puer*, sīc ītur ad astra. — VIRGIL.

   In the lexicon of youth, which fate reserves
   For a bright manhood, there is no such word
   As — *fail*. — EDWARD BULWER-LYTTON.

8. Victūrus *Genium* dēbet habēre *liber*. — MARTIAL.

   Books are the legacies that a great genius leaves to mankind. — ADDISON.

9. Cūrā ut *vir* sīs. — CICERO.

   Quit yourselves like men. — 1 SAMUEL.

10. Ex parvīs saepe magnārum *mōmenta* rērum pendent. — LIVY.

Oft what seems
A trifle, a mere nothing by itself,
In some nice situation, turns the scale
Of fate, and rules the most important actions.
— THOMSON.

11. *Calamitās virtūtis occāsiō* est. — SENECA.

Calamity is man's true touchstone.
— BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER.

12. Iūstitia nōn nōvit *patrem*, neque *mātrem*, neque *frātrem*. — ST. JEROME.

The cold neutrality of an impartial judge. — BURKE.

13. Nūllus *dolor* est quem nōn longinquitās *temporis* minuat. — CICERO.

Yes, gentle time, thy gradual, healing hand
Hath stolen from sorrow's grasp the envenom'd dart.
— MRS. TIGHE.

14. Solidae suō stant *rōbore* vīrēs. — VIRGIL.

As thy days, so shall thy strength be.
— DEUTERONOMY.

15. Immēnsa per *aequora*. — VIRGIL.

Thou glorious sea! more pleasing far
When all thy waters are at rest.
— MRS. HEMANS.

16. *Ōs* hominī sublīme dedit, caelumque tuērī. — OVID.

God hath made man upright. — ECCLESIASTES.

17. Obstipuēre animī, gelidusque per īma cucurrit *ossa* tremor. — VIRGIL.

And troubled blood through his pale face was seen,
As it a running messenger had been. — SPENSER.

18. Bonus atque fīdus
Iūdex honestum praetulit ūtilī. — HORACE.

He who the sword of heaven will bear
Should be as holy as severe. — SHAKESPEARE.

19. *Nox* erat, et terrīs *animālia* somnus habēbat. — VIRGIL.

Tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep! — YOUNG.

20. It *mare* prōruptum. — VIRGIL.

Roll on, thou deep and dark blue ocean — roll! — BYRON.

21. *Fās* omne abrumpit (fās, indeclinable). — VIRGIL.

They break their faith to God as well as us. — SHAKESPEARE.

22. *Iūra* dabat *lēgēs*que virīs. — VIRGIL.

Mark what unvary'd laws preserve each state,
Laws wise as nature, and as fixed as fate. — POPE.

23. *Frūctū* nōn foliīs, arborem aestimā. — PHAEDRUS.

The tree is known by his fruit. — MATTHEW.

24. Rem *acū* tetigistī.

Hit the nail on the head. — BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER.

25. *Domī* habuit unde disceret. —TERENCE.

The means that heaven yields must be embrac'd
And not neglected. —SHAKESPEARE.

26. Tertia iam lūnae sē *cornua* lūmine complent.
—VIRGIL.

And thrice, ere thrice yon moon had filled her horn.
—YOUNG.

27. Iam tempus agī *rēs*. —VIRGIL.

Now is the accepted time. —2 CORINTHIANS.

28. Carpe *diem*. —HORACE.

Now's the day, and now's the hour. —BURNS.

29. Caelum, nōn animum *mūtant*, quī trāns mare currunt. —HORACE.

And 'tis a poor relief we gain,
To change the place, but keep the pain.
—ISAAC WATTS.

30. Saepe *tacēns* vōcem verbaque vultus *habet*. —OVID.

The silence often of pure innocence
Persuades, when speaking fails.
—SHAKESPEARE.

31. Trōs Tyriusque mihi nūllō discrīmine *agētur*.
—VIRGIL.

Equal and exact justice to all men, of whatever state or persuasion, religious or political.
—THOMAS JEFFERSON.

32. *Audī*, vidē, tacē, sī vīs vīvere in pāce. —MAXIM.

Give every man thine ear, but few thy voice.
—SHAKESPEARE.

33. Sī animus *est* aequus tibi, satis habēs. — PLAUTUS.

Poor and content, is rich, and rich enough.
— SHAKESPEARE.

34. *Possunt*, quia *posse* videntur. — VIRGIL.

And all may do what has by man been done.
— YOUNG.

35. Quae nōn *prōsunt* singula, multa iuvant. — OVID.

By uniting we stand, by dividing we fall.
— JOHN DICKENSON.

36. Floccī nōn *faciunt*. — CICERO.

A fig for care, and a fig for woe.
— JOHN HEYWOOD.

37. Leve *fit*, quod bene *fertur* onus. — OVID.

There's no way to make sorrows light
But in the noble bearing. — W. ROWLEY.

38. Mediō tūtissimus *ībis*. — OVID.

Hold fast the golden mean. — COWPER.

39. Sērus in caelum *redeās !* — HORACE.

Long may you live!

40. Libenter hominēs id quod *volunt* crēdunt.
— CAESAR.

Thy wish was father, Harry, to that thought.
— SHAKESPEARE.

41. Idem *velle* atque *nōlle*, ea dēmum fīrma amīcitia est.
— SALLUST.

In companions
That do converse and waste the time together,
Whose souls do bear an equal yoke of love,
There needs must be a like proportion
Of lineaments, of manners, and of spirit.
— SHAKESPEARE.

42. Esse quam vidērī bonus *mālēbat*.
— SALLUST.

Men should be what they seem.
— SHAKESPEARE.

43. Deus *dabit* hīs quoque fīnem.
— VIRGIL.

Behind the clouds the sun is shining.
— LONGFELLOW.

44. *Īnsectantur* furiae.
— CICERO.

My conscience hath a thousand several tongues.
— SHAKESPEARE.

45. Dīs aliter *vīsum*.
— VIRGIL.

Man proposes, but God disposes.
— THOMAS À KEMPIS.

46. Cūrae levēs *loquuntur*, ingentēs stupent.
— SENECA.

Light cares speak, when mighty griefs are dumb.
— DANIEL'S "ROSAMOND."

47. *Moriāmur* et in media arma ruāmus.
— VIRGIL.

Let us do or die.
— PROVERB.

48. *Metīrī* sē quemque suō modulō ac pede vērum est.
— HORACE.

Measure your mind's height by the shade it casts!
— BROWNING.

49. Sapere *audē*. — HORACE.

Be wise to-day; 'tis madness to defer. — YOUNG.

50. Quī sibi *fīdit*
Dux regit exāmen. — HORACE.

Trust thyself; every heart vibrates to that iron string. — EMERSON.

51. *Gaudent* magnī virī rēbus adversīs. — SENECA.

His overthrow heap'd happiness upon him. — SHAKESPEARE.

52. Ingenium rēs
Adversae nudāre *solent*, cēlāre secundae. — HORACE.

Sweet are the uses of adversity,
Which, like the toad, ugly and venomous,
Wears yet a precious jewel in his head;
And this our life, exempt from public haunt,
Finds tongues in trees, books in the running brooks,
Sermons in stones, and good in everything.
— SHAKESPEARE.

53. Quī genus *iactat* suum, aliēna laudat. — SENECA.

From yon blue heaven above us bent,
The gardener Adam and his wife
Smile at the claims of long descent.
— TENNYSON.

54. Nec tū mēnsārum morsūs *horrēsce* futūrōs. — VIRGIL.

Present fears
Are less than horrible imaginings. — SHAKESPEARE.

55. Forsan et haec ōlim *meminisse* iuvābit. —VIRGIL.

Sweet is pleasure after pain. —DRYDEN.

56. Ego vērum amō, mendācem *ōdī*. —PLAUTUS.

Tell truth, and shame the Devil. —SHAKESPEARE.

57. Dīmidium factī est *coepisse*. —AUSONIUS.

The beginning is half the battle.

58. Nōn *licet* hominem esse saepe ita ut vult. —TERENCE.

Who does the best his circumstance allow,
Does well, acts nobly: angels could no more. —YOUNG.

59. Velle parum est: cupiās ut rē potiāris *oportet*. —OVID.

In idle wishes, fools supinely stay:
Be there a will, and wisdom find a way. —GEORGE CRABBE.

60. Tē lapsōrum *miseret*. —VIRGIL.

No breast so fierce, but knows some touch of pity. —SHAKESPEARE.

61. Officiō nec tē certāsse priōrem *paeniteat*. —VIRGIL.

I never did repent for doing good
Nor shall not now. —SHAKESPEARE.

62. Mē nōn sōlum *piget* stultitiae meae, sed etiam *pudet*. —CICERO.

If hearty sorrow
Be a sufficient ransom for offense,
I tender it here: I do as truly suffer,
As e'er I did commit. —SHAKESPEARE.

63. *Taedet* caelī convexa tuērī. — VIRGIL.

Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale.
— SHAKESPEARE.

64. *Alta* petēns. — VIRGIL.

'Tis from high life high characters are drawn.
— POPE.

65. Lēctiō *varia* delēctat. — SENECA.

Variety's the very spice of life. — COWPER.

66. *Ūna* salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. — VIRGIL.

What though the field be lost,
All is not lost. — MILTON.

67. Per mediōs, miscetque virīs neque cernitur *ūllī*.
— VIRGIL.

We rightly speak of the guardian angels.
— EMERSON.

68. *Nūllus* est locus domesticā sēde iūcundior.
— CICERO.

Be it ever so humble,
There's no place like home.
— J. HOWARD PAYNE.

69. *Alius* in *aliā* rē est magis ūtilis. — CICERO.

Each has his own knack. — EMERSON.

70. *Sōla* domō maeret vacua. — VIRGIL.

All that poets sing, and grief hath known
Of hopes laid waste, knells in that word — Alone!
— EDWARD BULWER-LYTTON.

71. Nihil est *tōtō* quod perstet in orbe. — OVID.

Every season brings new change. — BRYANT.

72. Nōn īgnāra malī, *miserīs* succurrere discō.
— VIRGIL.

A fellow-feeling makes one wondrous kind.
— DAVID GARRICK.

73. Quid nōn mortālia pectora cōgis aurī *sacra* famēs?
— VIRGIL.

The love of money is the root of all evil.
— 1 TIMOTHY.

74. Īgnōscitō saepe *alterī*. — SYRUS.

Forgive, be generous. — SCOTT.

75. *Uter utrī* virtūte anteferendus. — CAESAR.

Who deserves well, needs not another's praise.
— ROBERT HEATH.

76. Dēbēmus *neutrum* eōrum contrā alium iuvāre.
— CAESAR.

Impartial are our eyes and ears. — SHAKESPEARE.

77. *Celerēs* dēfer mea dicta per aurās. — VIRGIL.

Fly upon the wings of the wind. — PSALM 18.

78. Nihil est autem tam *volucre* quam maledictum.
— CICERO.

Virtue itself 'scapes not calumnious strokes.
— SHAKESPEARE.

79. In rēbus asperīs et tenuī spē *fortissima* quaeque cōnsilia tūtissima sunt. — LIVY.

The brave unfortunate are our best acquaintance;
They show us virtue may be much distress'd,
And give us their sample how to suffer.
— FRANCIS.

80. *Audentēs* deus ipse iuvat. —Ovid.

God helps them that help themselves.
—Benjamin Franklin.

81. Quam *veterēs* causae necessitūdinis! —Caesar.

Old friends are best. —Selden.

82. Ignis *edāx.* —Virgil.

How great a matter a little fire kindleth! —James.

83. Vēritātis sermō est *simplex.* —Seneca.

Truth needs no flowers of speech. —Pope.

84. Hectōra quis nōsset, sī *fēlīx* Trōia fuisset! —Ovid.

For now he lives in fame though not in life.
—Shakespeare.

85. Fāma, malum quā nōn aliud *vēlōcius* ūllum. —Virgil.

'Tis slander;
Whose edge is sharper than the sword; whose tongue
Outvenoms all the worms of Nile; whose breath
Rides on the posting wings. —Shakespeare.

86. Subtexta *malīs bona* sunt. —Manilius.

The web of our life is of mingled yarn, good and ill together. —Shakespeare.

87. Amīcum perdere est damnōrum *maximum.* —Syrus.

The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hoops of steel.
—Shakespeare.

88. Omnium rērum prīncipia *parva* sunt. — CICERO.

Tall oaks from little acorns grow.
— DAVID EVERETT.

89. Agere cōnsīderāte *plūris* est quam cōgitāre prūdenter.
— CICERO.

Act well your part, there all the honor lies.
— POPE.

90. Sī ad nātūram vīvēs, numquam eris *pauper;* sī ad opīniōnem numquam eris *dīves.* — SENECA.

Man's rich with little, were his judgment true:
Nature is frugal, and her wants are few. — YOUNG.

91. Quem dī dīligunt, *adolēscēns* moritur. — PLAUTUS.

And early called, how blest are they
Who wait in heaven their harvest day.
— WHITTIER.

92. Fortem facit vīcīna lībertās *senem.* — SENECA.

'Tis liberty alone that gives the flow'r
Of fleeting life its luster and perfume. — COWPER.

93. *Facilis* est ad beātam vītam via. — SENECA.

Our own felicity we make or find.
— GOLDSMITH.

94. Nihil tam *difficile* est quīn quaerendō investīgārī possit. — TERENCE.

Nothing's so hard but search will find it out.
— ROBERT HERRICK.

95. Pār levibus ventīs volucrīque *simillima* somnō.
— VIRGIL.

Lighter than the whirlwind's blast
He vanished from our eyes. — SCOTT.

96. Mē nūlla diēs tam fortibus ausīs
Dissimilem arguerit. —VIRGIL.

By how much unexpected, by so much
We must awake, endeavor for defense;
For courage mounteth with occasion.
—SHAKESPEARE.

97. *Gracilēs* grāmen carpsēre capellae. —OVID.

Animals enjoying life. —COWPER.

98. *Humilemque* vidēmus Ītaliam. —VIRGIL.

Italia! Oh, Italia! —BYRON.

99. Ācta *exteriōra* indicant *interiōra* sēcrēta. —COKE.

Suit the action to the word, the word to the action.
—SHAKESPEARE.

100. Sī vīs ad *summum* prōgredī ab *īnfimō* ōrdīre.
—SYRUS.

Life is a scale of degrees. —EMERSON.

101. Discipulus est *priōrī posterior* diēs. —SYRUS.
And make each day a critic on the last. —POPE.

102. *Proximōrum* incūrīosī longinqua sectāmur.
—PLINY THE YOUNGER.

'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view.
—THOMAS CAMPBELL.

103. Necessitās *ultimum* et maximum tēlum est.
—LIVY.

'Tis necessity,
To which the gods must yield. —HERRICK.

104. Nihil enim *aequē* grātum est adeptīs quam concupīscentibus. —PLINY THE YOUNGER.

Pleasures are like poppies spread,
You seize the flower, its bloom is shed. — BURNS.

105. Occāsiō *aegrē* offertur; *facile* āmittitur. — SYRUS.

There is a tide in the affairs of men,
Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.
Omitted, all the voyage of their life
Is bound in shallows, and in miseries.
On such a full sea are we now afloat,
And we must take the current when it serves,
Or lose our ventures. — SHAKESPEARE.

106. Quod nōn licet, *ācrius* ūrit. — OVID.

O thoughts of men accurs'd
Past and to come, seem best; things present, worst.
— SHAKESPEARE.

107. *Fortiter* malum quī patitur īdem post patitur bonum.
— PLAUTUS.

As night to stars, woe luster gives to man.
— YOUNG.

108. Vīxit, dum vīxit, *bene*. — TERENCE.

He most lives,
Who thinks most — feels the noblest — acts the best. — BAILEY'S FESTUS.

109. Anima *magis* est ubi amat quam ubi animat.
— MAXIM.

Where your treasure is, there will your heart be also. — MATTHEW.

110. Maximae cuique fortūnae *minimē* crēdendum est.
— LIVY.

Now, now she meets you with a glorious prize,
And spreads her locks before her as she flies.
— DRYDEN.

111. Accipe quam *prīmum;* brevis est occāsiō lucrī.
— MARTIAL.

Miss not the occasion; by the forelock take
That subtle Power, the never-halting time,
Lest a mere moment's putting off should make
Mischance almost as heavy as a crime.
— WORDSWORTH.

112. *Saepius* locūtum, numquam mē tacuisse paenitet.
— SYRUS.

Give it an understanding, but no tongue.
— SHAKESPEARE.

113. Factumque *diū* cēlāvit. — VIRGIL.

For murder, though it have no tongue, will speak
With most miraculous organ. — SHAKESPEARE.

114. Brevis ā nātūrā *nōbīs* vīta data est. — CICERO.

Life is short and the art long. — HIPPOCRATES.

115. Ē caelō dēscendit, nōsce *tē* ipsum. — JUVENAL.

Know then thyself, presume not God to scan;
The proper study of mankind is man. — POPE.

116. *Suī* memorēs aliquōs fēcēre merendō. — VIRGIL.

We live in deeds, not years. — PHILIP JAMES BAILEY.

117. Quod *tuum* (e)st *meum* (e)st: omne *meum* est autem *tuum*.
— PLAUTUS.

What's mine is yours, and what is yours is mine.
— SHAKESPEARE.

118. Sunt *sua* praemia laudī. — VIRGIL.

Virtue is its own reward. — PROVERB.

119. *Nostra* sine auxiliō fugiunt bona. — OVID.

Occasion, set on wing, flies fast away.
— MIRROR FOR MAGISTRATES.

120. Urbem quam statuō *vestra* est. — VIRGIL.

In Faith and Hope the world will disagree,
But all mankind's concern is Charity. — POPE.

121. *Hīc* exitus illum
Sorte tulit. — VIRGIL.

The term of life is limited. — SPENSER.

122. Spērāvimus *ista* dum fortūna fuit. — VIRGIL.

God wills, man hopes. — LOWELL.

123. *Illī*, quibus invidētur, rem habent. — PLAUTUS.

With fame, in just proportion, envy grows,
The man that makes a character, makes foes.
— YOUNG.

124. Vērus amīcus est *is* quī tamquam alter īdem.
— CICERO.

Friendship is the cement of two minds,
As of one man the soul and body is. — CHAPMAN.

125. *Ipse* īgnōtus, egēns, Libyae dēserta peragrō.
— VIRGIL.

A stranger in a strange land. — EXODUS.

126. Nīl prōdest quod nōn laedere possit *idem.*
— Ovid.

People may have *too much* of a *good thing.*
— John Wolcott.

127. Fidem *quī* perdit perdere ultrā nīl potest.
— Syrus.

Take honor from me, and my life is done.
— Shakespeare.

128. *Quis* genus Aeneadum, *quis* Trōiae nesciat urbem?
— Virgil.

But there are deeds which should not pass away,
And names that must not wither, though the earth
Forgets her empires with a just decay. — Byron.

129. Sī bene *quid* faciās, faciās cito. — Ausonius.

If it were done, when 'tis done, then 'twere well
It were done quickly. — Shakespeare.

130. Nē *quid* nimis. — Terence.

Moderation is the silken string running through the pearl chain of all virtues. — Bishop Hall.

131. Facitō *aliquid* operis, ut semper tē diabolus inveniat occupātum. — St. Jerome.

For Satan finds some mischief still
For idle hands to do. — Isaac Watts.

132. *Nēmō* ex hōc numerō mihi nōn dōnātus abībit.
— Virgil.

See how the world its veterans rewards! — Pope.

133. Graviōra *quaedam* sunt remedia perīculīs.
— Syrus.

Remedy worse than the disease.
— Beaumont and Fletcher.

134. Quae rēs est quae *cuiusquam* animum in hāc causā dubium facere possit? — Cicero

Our doubts are traitors,
And make us lose the good we oft might win,
By fearing to attempt. — SHAKESPEARE.

135. Minimē sibi *quisque* nōtus est. — CICERO.
And all our knowledge is ourselves to know. — POPE.

136. Sua *quisque* exempla dēbet patī. — PHAEDRUS.
To each his sufferings. — GRAY.

137. In ūnō *quōque* virōrum bonōrum habitat deus. — SENECA.
'Tis the divinity that stirs within us. — ADDISON.

138. Altissima *quaeque* flūmina minimō sonō lābuntur. — QUINTIUS CURTIUS RUFUS.
Smooth runs the water where the brook is deep. — SHAKESPEARE.

139. Quae *cuique* est cōpia, laetī
Dōna ferunt. — VIRGIL.
True charity, a plant divinely nurs'd. — COWPER.

140. *Quidquid* erit superanda omnis fortūna ferendō est. — VIRGIL.
What fates impose, that men must needs abide. — SHAKESPEARE.

141. *Cuiusvīs* hominis est errāre. — CICERO.
To err is human. — POPE.

142. Ab *ūnō* disce omnēs. — VIRGIL.
From one, judge all.

143. Adspīrat *prīmō* fortūna labōrī. — VIRGIL.
Fortune smiles upon our first effort.

144. Etsī nōn prōsunt *singula*, iūncta iuvant.
United we stand, divided we fall.

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative.	*part.*	participle.
acc.	accusative.	*pass.*	passive.
adj.	adjective.	*perf.*	perfect.
adv.	adverb.	*pl.*	plural.
conj.	conjunction.	*prep.*	preposition.
dat.	dative.	*pres.*	present.
f.	feminine.	*pron.*	pronoun.
gen.	genitive.	*refl.*	reflexive.
indecl.	indeclinable.	*rel.*	relative.
intr.	intransitive.	*sing.*	singular.
m.	masculine.	*st.*	stem.
n.	neuter.	*subj.*	subjunctive.
nom.	nominative.	*tr.*	transitive.
num.	numeral.	*v.*	verb.
opp.	opposite.	*w.*	with.

VOCABULARY

A

abdicate, *abdicō, abdicāre, abdicāvī, abdicātus,* w. acc. of personal pronoun and abl. of separation.

ability, *ingenium, ingeniī,* n.

able, *potēns,* gen. *potentis,* adj. and pres. part.; **be able,** *possum, posse, potuī,* —.

about, *ferē,* adv. *dē,* prep. w. abl.; *circiter,* prep. w. acc.

absent, *absēns,* gen. *absentis,* pres. part.; **be absent,** *absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.*

accompany, *comitor, comitārī, comitātus sum.*

accomplish, *perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus.*

accordingly, *itaque,* conj. (349–51).

account, *ratiō, ratiōnis,* f.; **on account of,** *ob, propter,* preps. w. acc.; **on this account,** *ob eam rem; quam ob rem; quā dē causā; quā ex parte.*

accurately, *accūrātē,* adv., *magnā cum cūrā* (70).

accursed, *sacer, sacra, sacrum.*

accuse, *accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātus.*

accustomed, *solitus, a, um;* **be accustomed,** *soleō, solēre, solitus sum; cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus.*

Achilles, *Achillēs, Achillis,* or *Achilleos,* or *Achillī,* m.

acknowledge, *cōnfiteor, cōnfitērī, cōnfessus sum;* **acknowledge authority,** *in potestātem permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissus,* w. acc. of pers. or refl. pron.

acquit, *absolvō, absolvere, absolvī, absolūtus.*

acre, *iūgerum, iūgerī,* n.; gen. plu. *iūgerum.*

across, *trāns, per, in,* preps. w. acc.

act, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus;* = **conduct one's self,** *gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus,* w. acc. of pers. or refl. pron.

add, *addō, addere, addidī, additus.*

Addicti, *Addictī, Addictōrum,* m.

adjacent, *proximus, a, um.*

adjust, *compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositus.*

admire, *admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus sum;* **to be admired,** *admīrābilis, admīrābile,* adj.

admit, *ascīscō, ascīscere, ascīvī, ascītus.*

adorn, *ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātus.*

advance, *prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum; prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessus.*

advantage, *bonum, bonī,* n. (49).

adverse, *adversus, a, um.*

advertise, *nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus.*

advice, *monitus, monitūs,* m.; **receive advice,** *moneor, monērī, monitus sum; cōnsulor, cōnsulī, cōnsultus sum.*

advise, *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.*
aedile, *aedīlis, is,* m.
Aeneas, *Aenēās, Aenēae,* m.
Aeneid, *Aenēis, Aenēidis* or *Aenēidos,* f.
Aequians, *Aequī, Aequōrum,* m.
affairs, *rēs, rērum,* f.
affirm, *dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus; adfīrmō, adfīrmāre, adfīrmāvī, adfīrmātus.*
afraid, *timidus, a, um;* be afraid, *timeō, timēre, timuī,* —.
Africa, *Āfrica, Āfricae,* f.
after, *post,* prep. w. acc. (60; 74; 246; 247).
afterwards, *posteā,* adv.; *deinde,* adv. (304); not long afterwards, *paulō post.*
again, *iterum,* adv.; again and again, *semel atque iterum, etiam atque etiam.*
against, *in, contrā,* preps. w. acc.
Agamemnon, *Agamemnon, Agamemnonis,* m.
age, *aetās, aetātis,* f.; age of youth, *iuventūs, iuventūtis,* f.; old age, *senectūs, senectūtis,* f.
agreeable, *iūcundus, a, um.*
agriculture, *agricultūra, agricultūrae,* f.
aid, *auxilium, auxiliī* or *auxilī,* n.
Ajax, *Aiāx, Aiācis,* m.
alarmed, *permōtus, a, um; perterritus, a, um.*
alert, *vigilāns, vigilantis,* adj.
Alexander, *Alexander, Alexandrī,* m.
Alexandria, *Alexandrīa, Alexandrīae,* f.
all, *omnis, omne; tōtus, a, um; cūnctus, a, um; ūniversus, a, um.*
alliance, *societās, societātis,* f.; *foedus, foederis,* n. (17).
allied by treaty, *foederātus, a, um.*
Allobroges, *Allobrogēs, Allobrogum,* m.; acc. pl. *Allobrogās.*
allow, *patior, patī, passus sum; sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs; licet, licēre, licuit* or *licitum est* (273).
almost, *paene,* adv.
alone, *sōlus, a, um,* gen. *sōlīus,* dat. *sōlī; ūnus, a, um,* gen. *ūnīus,* dat. *ūnī.*
along, *per,* prep. w. acc.
Alps, *Alpēs, Alpium,* f.
already, *iam,* adv.
also, *quoque,* adv. (331); *et,* conj. (325); *īdem, eadem, idem* (130).
altar, *āra, arae,* f.
although, *cum; quamquam; etsī* (259–266; 74).
always, *semper,* adv.; *numquam nōn* (298).
Amalthea, *Amalthēa, Amalthēae,* f.
ambassador, *lēgātus, lēgātī,* m.
ambiguous, *ambiguus, a, um.*
ambrosia, *ambrosia, ambrosiae,* f.
among, *apud, inter, in,* preps. w. acc.
amusement (for the sake of), *animī causā.*
ancestors, *maiōrēs, um,* m.
ancestry (from a long line of), *clārissimō patre, avō, maiōribus.*
Anchises, *Anchīsēs, Anchīsae,* m.
ancient, *antīquus, a, um; prīscus, a, um.*
and, *et; atque; — que* (324–330).
Andes, *Andes, Andis,* m.
angry, *īrātus, a, um;* be angry, *īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum.*
animal, *bēstia, bēstiae,* f.; *animal, animālis,* n.
animate, *incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus.*

announce, *nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus.*

another, *alius, a, ud*, gen. *alīus*, dat. *aliī.*

answer, *respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus;* noun, *respōnsum, ī*, n.

Antioch, *Antiochīa, Antiochīae*, f.

Antium, *Antium, Antiī* or *Antī*, n.

Antoninus, *Antonīnus, Antonīnī*, m.

Antony, *Antōnius, Antōnī*, m.

anxiety, *animī sollicitūdō, sollicitūdinis*, f.

any, *ūllus, a, um*, gen. *ūllīus*, dat. *ūllī;* **any one**, *quisquam;* **anything**, *quidquam* or *quicquam* (146–151).

Apollo, *Apollō, Apollinis*, m.

appear, *videor, vidērī, vīsus sum;* **appear on horseback**, *in equō eō, īre, iī, itus.*

apply to (= ask for), *rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus*, w. two accs.; *petō, petere, petīvī* (*petiī*), *petītus*, w. acc. of thing and *ab* w. abl. of person.

appoint (a time), *dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus;* (a person), *dēligō, deligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.*

approach, *adeō, adīre, adiī, aditus; appropīnquō, appropīnquāre, appropīnquāvī, appropīnquātus;* noun, *aditus, ūs*, m.

Archias, *Aulus Licinius Archiās*, gen. *Aulī Licinī Archiae*, m.

architect, *auctor, auctōris*, m.

Argives, *Argīvī, Argīvōrum*, m.

arise, *surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus.*

Aristides, *Aristīdēs, Aristīdis*, m.

arm, *armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus.*

Armenia, *Armenia, Armeniae*, f.

armor, *arma, armōrum*, n.

army, *exercitus, exercitūs*, m.; *agmen, agminis*, n.; *aciēs, aciēī*, f.

around, *circum*, prep. w. acc.

Arpinum, *Arpīnum, Arpīnī*, n.

arrest, *comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus.*

arrive in = come through to, *perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus* (*in* w. acc.).

art, *ars, artis*, f.; **art of war**, *rēs mīlitāris* (*rēs, reī*, f.; *mīlitāris, mīlitāre*, adj.).

Artaxata, *Artaxata, Artaxatae*, f.; *Artaxata, Artaxatōrum*, n.

Artemisia, *Artemisia, Artemisiae*, f.

arx, *arx, arcis*, f.

as, *ut; quī, quae, quod; ac, prō* (62); **as soon as**, *ut prīmum* (240–243); **as soon as possible**, *quam prīmum* (94).

Ascanius, *Ascanius, Ascanī*, m.

ashamed (be), *pudet, pudēre, puduit* or *puditum est* (37).

Asia Minor, *Asia, Asiae*, f.

ask, *rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus* (283; 56); **ask permission**, *petere ut liceat*, w. dat. of person.

assassinate, *necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus.*

assemble, *convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus* (tr.); *conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus* (intr.).

assistance, *auxilium, auxiliī*, n.

assume command, *imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus.*

at first, *prīmō* (303); **at his death**, *cum mortuus esset;* **at length**, *tandem; dēnique;* **at once**, *statim;* **at the same time**, *eōdem tempore* (130); **at this time**, *id temporis, hōc* or *eō tempore;* **at times**, *nōn-*

numquam; at work, *in opere* or *labōrāns;* not at all, *nihil* (55); at Corinth, 39; at Carthage, 77.

Athenians, *Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēnsium,* m.

Athens, *Athēnae, Athēnārum,* f.; at or in Athens, *Athēnīs* (77).

Atilius, *Atilius, Atilī,* m.

attach, *coniūngō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus.*

attack, *aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum;* impetum *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus,* w. *in* and the acc.; noun, *impetus, impetūs,* m.

attend, *comitor, comitārī, comitātus sum;* attend to, *cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus* (198).

Attica, *Attica, Atticae,* f.

Atticus, *Atticus, Atticī,* m.

augur, *augur, auguris,* m.

August, *Sextīlis, Sextīle;* *Augustus, a, um* (353).

Augustus, *Augustus, Augustī,* m.

autumn, *autumnus, autumnī,* m.

avarice, *avāritia, avāritiae,* f.

Avernus, *Avernus, Avernī,* m.

avert, *āvertō, avertere, āvertī, āversus.*

avoid, *vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātus.*

aware (be), *sibi cōnscius esse* with gen.; I am aware, *mihi cōnscius sum;* you are aware, *tibi cōnscius es;* he is aware, *sibi cōnscius est;* we are aware, *nōbīs cōnscii sumus,* etc.

away (be), *absum, abesse, āfuī* or *abfuī, āfutūrus* or *abfutūrus.*

ax, *secūris, secūris,* f.

B

Babylon, *Babylōn, Babylōnis,* f.

Bacchus, *Bacchus, Bacchī,* m.

back, *tergum, tergī,* n.; from the back, *ā tergō.*

back, *re* or *red* in composition, *red* before vowels, before *h,* and before *dō, re* in other compounds.

baggage (of the soldier), *sarcinae, sarcinārum,* f.; (of the army), *impedīmenta, impedīmentōrum,* n.

bank, *rīpa, rīpae,* f.

bar (= hem in), *contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus.*

barbarian, *barbarus, barbarī,* m.

barking, *lātrātus, lātrātūs,* m.

battle, *pugna, pugnae,* f.; *proelium, proeliī,* n.; *certāmen, certāminis,* n.

be, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.*

bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*

beard, *barba, barbae,* f.

beast, *pecus, pecudis,* f.; beast of burden, *iūmentum, iūmentī,* n.

beautiful, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*

beauty, *pulchritūdō, pulchritūdinis,* f.

because, *quod; quia; quoniam; cum* (253–259).

become, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; fīō, fierī, factus sum.*

before, *ante,* prep. w. acc.; *anteā,* adv., *prius,* adv.; = in presence of, *apud,* prep. w. acc.; of a speech before the senate, *ad* with acc. (60; 244, 245).

begin, *incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus;* *coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum;* begin war, *bellum suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus;* begin battle, *proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissus.*

beginning, *initium, initiī,* n.; = first part of, *prīmus, a, um* (95).

behind, *post,* prep. w. acc.; from behind, *ā tergō.*

behold, *contemplor, contemplārī, contemplātus sum.*
believe, *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus.*
belong to, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, w. gen.
beneath, *sub*, prep. w. acc. after a verb of motion, w. abl. after a verb of rest.
benefit, *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, profūturus;* noun, *bonum, bonī*, n. (49).
besides, *praeter, secundum*, preps. w. acc.; conj., *autem* (340).
besiege, *oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus.*
best, *optimus, a, um.*
better, *melior, melius.*
Bias, *Biās, Biantis*, m.
bill (= law), *lēx, lēgis*, f.
bind, *vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus; ligō, ligāre, ligāvī, ligātus; nectō, nectere, nexuī* or *nexī, nexus.*
Bithynia, *Bīthȳnia, Bīthȳniae*, f.
bitter, *acerbus, a, um*, opp. of *mītis, mīte.*
black, *āter, ātra, ātrum*, opp. of *albus, a, um; niger, nigra, nigrum*, opp. of *candidus, a, um.*
blame, *culpō, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus; reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus.*
blood, *sanguis, sanguinis*, m.; *cruor, cruōris*, m.
boat, ship, vessel, *nāvis, nāvis*, f.; **canoe**, *linter, lintris*, f.; *ratis, ratis*, f.
boatman, *portitor, portitōris*, m.
body, *corpus, corporis*, n.
bold, *audāx*, gen. *audācis.*
book, *liber, librī*, m.
bookcase, *forulī, forulōrum*, m.
border, *limbus, limbī*, m.
bordered, *praetextus, a, um.*
born (be), *nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.*
both, *ambo, ae, o; uterque, utraque, utrumque* (155); **both . . . and**, *et . . . et.*
bottom of, *īnfimus* or *īmus, a, um* (95).
brave, *fortis, forte.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
break, *frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus; rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus.*
bribe, *largior, largīrī, largītus sum.*
bridge, *pōns, pontis*, m.; **bridge a river**, *in flūmine pontem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.*
bring, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus;* **bring** (into a contio), *prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductus;* **bring about**, *efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus;* **bring from**, *efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlatus;* **bring an accusation against some one**, *aliquem aliquid* (55) *āccūsō, accūsāre, accusāvī, accūsātus;* **bring** or **lead to**, *addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus.*
bronze, *aes, aeris*, n.
brother, *frāter, frātris*, m.
Brundisium, *Brundisium, Brundisiī* or *Brundisī*, n.
Brutus, *Brūtus, Brūtī*, m.
build, *aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus; pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus.*
building, *aedificium, aedificiī*, n.
burden, *onus, oneris*, n. (49).
burn, *incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus; combūrō, combūrere, combussī, combūstus.*
burning, *incēnsiō, incēnsiōnis*, f.

bury, *sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultus.*
business, *negōtium, negotiī,* n.
bustling, *celeber, celebris, celebre.*
but, *sed; autem* (337–344).
buy, *emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus.*
by, *ā* or *ab,* prep. w. abl. (315).

C

Caesar, *Gāius Iūlius Caesar,* gen. *Gāī Iūlī Caesaris.*
call, *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus; nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātus; appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus;* call out, *clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus;* call upon somebody for something, *aliquid ab aliquō postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus* (56).
calm, *tranquillitās, tranquillitātis,* f.
camp, *castra, castrōrum,* n.
Campania, *Campānia, Campāniae,* f.
Campus Martius, *Campus Mārtius,* gen. *Campī Mārtī,* m.
can, *possum, posse, potuī, —;* I cannot but think, *facere nōn possum quīn putem;* you cannot but think, *facere nōn potes quīn putes;* he cannot but think, *facere nōn potest quīn putet,* etc.
capital, *caput, capitis,* n.
Capitol, *Capitōlium, Capitōlīī,* n.
Capitoline, *Capitolīnus, Capitōlīnī,* m., or *Capitōlium, Capitōlīī,* n.
Cappadocia, *Cappadocia, Cappadociae,* f.
captive, *captīvus, a, um; captus, a, um;* noun, *captīvus, captīvī,* m.
capture, *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.*
care, *cūra, cūrae,* f.; take care of, *cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus;* take care (= be cautious), *caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus;* care a straw, *floccī faciō, facere, fēcī, factus* (34).
carefully, *magnā cum cūrā; dīligenter, accūrātē,* advs.
Caria, *Cāria, Cāriae,* f.
carry, *portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus;* carry over, *trānsportō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātus.*
Carthage, *Karthāgō, Karthāginis,* f.
Carthaginian, *Karthāginiēnsis, Karthāgīniēnsis,* m.
case, *rēs, reī,* f.; *causa, causae,* f.
Catiline, *Catilīna, Catilīnae,* m.
Cato, *Catō, Catōnis,* m.
cattle, *pecus, pecoris,* n.; *pecus, pecudis,* f.
Catulus, *Catulus, Catulī,* m.
cause, *causa, causae,* f.; *cūrō, curāre, curāvī, curātus* (198); *efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus,* w. *ut* and subj.
cautious, *cautus, a, um.*
cavalry, *equitātus, equitātūs,* m.
celebrate games, *lūdōs faciō, facere, fēcī, factus;* celebrate a triumph, *triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī, triumphātus.*
celebrated, *clārus, a, um.*
celestials, *caelestēs, caelestum,* m.
censure, *reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendī, reprehēnsus; culpō, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātus.*
center, *stō, stāre, stetī, status.*
century (= one hundred years), *centum annī* (*centum* indecl.), *annus, ī,* m.
Ceparius, *Cēpārius, Cēpārī,* m.
Cerberus, *Cerberus, Cerberī,* m.
Ceres, *Cerēs, Cereris,* f.
certain, *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam*

or *quoddam*, indef. pron.; *certus, a, um.*

Cethegus, *Cethēgus, Cethēgī*, m.

chain, *vinculum, vinculī*, n.; *catēna, catēnae*, f.

chance, *occāsiō, occāsiōnis*, f.; **you have a chance to show**, *habēs ubi ostendās;* **by chance**, *forte*, adv.

change, *mutō, mutāre, mutāvī, mutātus;* **change one's mind**, *animum convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus.*

charge with, *accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātus* (35).

chariot, *currus, currūs*, m.

Charon, *Charōn, Charōntis*, m.

chief, *prīnceps, prīncipis*, adj. and noun.

chiefly, *maximē*, adv.

chieftain, *dux, ducis*, m.

child, *puer, puerī*, m.; *ūnus ex līberīs* (**one of the children**).

children, *līberī, līberōrum*, m.

Chilo, *Chīlō, Chīlōnis*, m.

choose, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus; legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus; dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.*

Cicero, *Mārcus Tullius Cicerō*, gen. *Mārcī Tullī Cicerōnis*, m.

Cilicia, *Cilicia, Ciliciae*, f.

Cimon, *Cīmon, Cīmōnis*, m.

Cincinnatus, *Lūcius Quīntus Cincinnātus*, gen. *Lūcī Quīntī Cincinnātī*, m.

circular, *circulāris, circulāre*, adj.

circulate a report, *ēnūntiō, ēnuntiāre, ēnūntiāvī, ēnūntiātus.*

Cisalpine, *Cisalpīnus, a, um.*

citadel, *arx, arcis*, f.

citizen, *cīvis, cīvis*, m. and f.

city, *urbs, urbis*, f.

civic, *cīvicus, a, um.*

claim, *pōscō, pōscere, popōscī*, —.

clashing, *sonitus, sonitūs*, m.

class, *ōrdō, ōrdinis*, m.

Claudius, *Appius Claudius*, gen. *Appī Claudī*, m.

Cleobulus, *Cleobūlus, Cleobūlī*, m.

clever, *callidus, a, um.*

client, *cliēns, clientis*, m. and f.

cloak, *amictus, amictūs*, m.

Clodius, *Clōdius, Clōdī*, m.

coast, *ōra maritima*, gen. *ōrae maritimae*, f.

cohort, *cohors, cohortis*, f.

cold, *frīgus, frīgoris*, n.; **extreme cold**, *frīgora, frīgorum*, n. plu.

collect, *cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus; colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus.*

college (sacred), *sānctum collēgium*, gen. *sānctī collēgiī*, n.

coloniae, *colōniae, colōniārum*, f.

colonist, *colōnus, colōnī*, m.

colony, *colōnia, colōniae*, f.

column, *columna, columnae*, f.

combined, *coniūnctus, a, um.*

come, *veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus;* **come to one's aid**, *alicuī auxiliō veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus* (49); **come about** (= happen), *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; fīō, fierī, factus sum.*

coming, *adventus, adventūs*, m.

command, *imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus* (282); **military command** (= commission), *imperium, imperiī*, n.

commander-in-chief, *imperātor, imperātōris*, m.

commend, *laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus.*

commit care of, *commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātus.*

common, *commūnis, commūne,* adj.

companion, *comes, comitis,* m. and f.

compel, *cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus.*

complain, *queror, querī, questus sum.*

conceal, *cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus* (56).

condition, *condiciō, condiciōnis,* f.; on condition that, *sī; dum modo;* conditions fulfilled = all things having been done.

confess, *cōnfiteor, cōnfitērī, cōnfessus sum.*

confidence, *fidēs, fideī,* f.; to have confidence in, *cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum,* with either dat. or abl.; to lose confidence, *diffīdō, diffīdere, diffīsus sum.*

conjecture, *coniectūra, coniectūrae,* f.

connect, *inter sē coniungere, coniūngō, coniūngere, coniūnxī, coniūnctus.*

conquer, *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus; superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus.*

conscience, *cōnscientia, cōnscientiae,* f.; because his conscience troubled him, *propter cōnscientiam* or *abiectus cōnscientiā.*

conscripti, *cōnscrīptī, cōnscrīptōrum,* m.

consent, *cōnsēnsiō, cōnsēnsiōnis,* f.; without one's consent, *eō invītō* (74).

consider, *iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus* (278); be considered, *habeor, habērī, habitus sum.*

consist in or of, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (33).

conspirator, *coniūrātus, coniūrātī,* m.

consul, *cōnsul, cōnsulis,* m.

consular, *cōnsulāris, cōnsulāre,* adj.

consulship, *cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs,* m.

consult, *cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus* (44).

consummate, *summus, a, um.*

contain, *teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus;* contain the fate = in them is the fate.

contented, *aequō animō* (72; 2).

contio, *cōntiō, cōntiōnis,* f.

contract, *locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus* (198).

contrary to, *contrā,* prep. with acc.; contrary to the advice of, *nōn monitus, a, um; contrā voluntātem.*

convey, *indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus.*

convict, *damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus.*

Corcyra, *Corcȳra, Corcȳrae,* f.

cord, *nervus, nervī,* m.

Corinth, *Corinthus, Corinthī,* f.; at or in Corinth, *Corinthī* (39).

corn, *frūmentum, frūmentī,* n.

corrections made, *corrēcta, corrēctorum,* n.; corrections being made or to be made, *corrigenda, corrigendōrum,* n.

cost, *stō, stāre, stetī, status.*

Cotta, *Mārcus Aurelius Cotta,* gen. *Mārcī Aurelī Cottae,* m.

council, *concilium, conciliī,* n.

countenance, *vultus, vultūs,* m.

country, *ager, agrī,* m.; native country, *patria, patriae,* f.; country (in opposition to city), *rūs, rūris,* n.

courage, *fortitūdō, fortitūdinis,* f.; *virtūs, virtūtis,* f.; *animī, animōrum,* m.

course, *cursus, cursūs,* m.; of course, *quidem ; vērō* (330); in the course of a month, *in mēnse* (*mēnsis, mēnsis,* m.).

court = kingdom, *rēgnum, rēgnī,* n.; in court, *in iūdiciō.*

cover, *tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus ;* cover with troops, *cōpiīs compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.*

crafty, *callidus, a, um ; pellāx, pellācis,* adj.

create, *creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus.*

credit, *decus, decoris,* n.

creditor, *crēditor, crēditōris,* m.

Crete, *Crēta, Crētae,* f.

crew, *virī, virōrum ; nautae, nautārum,* m.; *rēmiges, rēmigum,* m.

crime, *scelus, sceleris,* n.; *flāgitium, flāgitiī,* n.

crisis, *discrīmen, discrīminis,* n.

cross, *trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitus.*

crowd, *concursus, concursūs,* m.; crowd around, *circumveniō, circumvēnīre, circumvēnī, circumventus.*

crowded, *celeber, celebris, celebre.*

crown, *corōna, corōnae,* f.; *corōnō, corōnāre, corōnāvī, corōnātus.*

cruel, *crūdēlis, crūdēle,* adj.

cruelty, *crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis,* f.; *cruciātus, cruciātūs,* m.

cultivate, *colō, colere, coluī, cultus.*

Cumae, *Cūmae, Cūmārum,* f.; of Cumae, *Cūmaeus, a, um.*

curia, *cūria, cūriae,* f.

custody, *cūstōdia, cūstōdiae,* f.; be in custody, *comprehendor, comprehendī, comprehēnsus sum.*

custom, *mos, mōris,* m.; *. cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis,* f.

cut, *caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus ; scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus ;* cut into, *incīdō, incīdere, incīdī, incīsus ;* cut off from, *prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus,* w. abl. of separation.

Cyzicus, *Cȳzicus, Cȳzicī,* f.

D

Dacia, *Dācia, Dāciae,* f.

daily, *quotīdiē,* adv.; *in diēs ; in singulōs diēs.*

danger, *perīculum, perīculī,* n.

dangerous, *perīculōsus, a, um.*

dare, *audeō, audēre, ausus sum.*

daring, *audāx, audācis,* adj.

Darius, *Dārīus, Dārī,* m.

dark-colored, *pullus, a, um.*

darkness, *tenebrae, tenebrārum,* f.

date, *coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum.*

daughter, *fīlia, fīliae,* f.

day, *diēs, diēī,* m. or f. in sing., m. in plu.

dead, *mortuus, a, um.*

dear, *cārus, a, um.*

death, *mors, mortis,* f.

debt, *aes aliēnum,* gen. *aeris aliēnī,* n.

debtor, *dēbitor, dēbitōris,* m.

December, *December, Decembris, Decembre.*

decide, *cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus ;* decide = make up one's mind, *animum indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus.*

declare, *dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus ;* declare war, *bellum indīcō, indīcere, indīxī, indictus,* w. dat.

decree of the senate, *iūdicium senātūs ; senātūs cōnsultum ;* decree of banishment, *aquae et ignis interdictiō* (*iūdicium, iūdiciī,* n.;

senātus, senātūs, m.; *cōnsultum, cōnsultī*, n.; *aqua, aquae*, f.; *ignis, ignis*, m.; *interdictiō, interdictiōnis*, f.).

deed, *rēs, reī*, f.; *factum, factī*, n.

deep, *altus, a, um.*

defeat, *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus; superō, superāre, superāvī, superātus.*

defend, *dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus.*

defendant, *reus, reī*, m.; *hīc* (114).

deify, *prō deō colō, colere, coluī, cultus* (*deus, deī*, m.).

Deiphobe, *Dēiphobē, Dēiphobēs*, f.

delay, *moror, morārī, morātus sum*; noun, *mora, morae*, f.

deliver, *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus*; **deliver an address** or **oration**, *ōrātiōnem habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus* (*ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis*, f.); **deliver books**, *librōs adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātus* (*liber, librī*, m.).

Delos, *Dēlos, Dēlī*, f.

Delphi, *Delphī, Delphōrum*, m.

demand, *postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus; pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, —*; **demand in return**, *repetō, repetere, repetīvī, repetītus*; **make many demands**, *multa postulāre* (16).

deny, *negō, negāre, negāvī, negātus; īnfitior, īnfitiārī, īnfitiātus sum.*

depend on, *cōnfidō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum.*

deposit, *dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus*; **deposit verses**, *carmina condō, condere, condidī, conditus* (*carmen, carminis*, n.).

deprive, *prīvō, prīvāre, prīvāvī, prīvātus.*

deputies, *lēgātī, lēgātōrum*, m.

desert, *dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus; relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus.*

deserve, *mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus.*

desire, *cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus; requīrō, requīrere, requīsīvī, requīsītus; cupiditās, cupiditātis*, f.

desirous, *cupidus, a, um.*

desist from, *dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitus.*

despair of, *dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus.*

desperadoes, *virī nēquissimī* (*vir, virī*, m.; *nēquissimus, a, um*, super. of *nēquam*, worthless).

destroy, *dēlēo, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus*; **destroy by fire**, *ignī incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus*; **destroy bridge**, *pontem interscindō, interscindere, interscidī, interscissus*, or *rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus.*

determine, *statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus; cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus.*

devote time, *tempus sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus*, w. dat.; *tempus tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus* (*tempus, temporis*, n.).

devour, *vorō, vorāre, vorāvī, vorātus.*

Diana, *Diāna, Diānae*, f.

dictator, *dictātor, dictātōris*, m.

dictatorship, *dictātūra, dictātūrae, f.*

die, *morior, morī, mortuus sum* (fut. part. *moritūrus, a, um*).

differ, *differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus.*

different, *varius, a, um.*

difficult, *difficilis, difficile*, adj.

difficulty, *difficultās, difficultātis*, f.; **with difficulty**, *vix*, adv.

dig, *effodiō, effodere, effōdī, effossus*.

diligently, *dīligenter*, adv.

dine, *cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātus*; **dine at a friend's house**, *apud amīcum cēnāre*.

dining room, *cēnātiō, cēnātiōnis*, f.

Diomede, *Diomēdes, Diomēdis*, m.

direction, *pars, partis*, f.

disappear, *ēvānēscō, ēvānēscere, ēvānuī*, —.

disappointed, *spē dēiectus, a, um* (*spēs, speī*, f.).

disgrace, *turpitūdō, turpitūdinis*, f.; *dēdecus, dēdecoris*, n.

disgraceful, *turpis, turpe*, adj.

disposition, *animus, animī*, m.

distinguished, *clārus, a, um*.

distribute, *distribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtus*.

district, *pars, partis*, f.; *pāgus, pāgī*, m.

disturbance of mind, *animī perturbātiō, perturbātiōnis*, f.

ditch, *fossa, fossae*, f.

divide, *dīvīdō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus; distribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtus*.

divinely, *dīvīnitus*, adv.

division, *pars, partis*, f.

do, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus; agō, agere, ēgī, āctus; gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus*; **do one's best**, *operam nāvō, nāvāre, nāvāvī, nāvātus* (173; 178).

Dodona, *Dōdōna, Dōdōnae*, f.

dog, *canis, canis*, m. and f. (gen. plu. *canum*).

door, *iānua, iānuae*, f.

doubt, *dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis*, f.; *dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus*; **there is no doubt that**, *nōn est dubium quīn* (276).

down, *dē*, prep. w. abl.; **down to**, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

Draco, *Dracō, Dracōnis*, m.

drag, *trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus*; **drag = trail**, *dēfluō, dēfluere, dēflūxī, dēfluxus*.

draw up, *subdūcō, subdūcere, subdūxī, subductus*.

dress, *habitus, habitūs*, m.; *vestis, vestis*, f.

drink, *bibō, bibere, bibī*, —; *pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtātus* or *pōtus*.

drive, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus*; **drive out**, *ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus*; **drive back**, *rēiciō, rēicere, rēiēcī, rēiectus; repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus*.

drown, *submergō, submergere, submersī, submersus*.

during, *per*, prep. w. acc.

duty, *officium, officiī*; **it is some one's duty**, *alicuius est* (33).

dwelling, *domicilium, domiciliī*, n.; *locus ac sēdēs* (*locus, locī*, m. in sing., m. and n. in plu.; *sēdēs, sēdis*, f.).

Dyrrachium, *Dyrrachium, Dyrrachiī* or *Dyrrachī*, n.

E

each, *quisque, quaeque, quidque, quicque* or *quodque; uterque, utraque, utrumque* (155).

eager, *appetēns*, gen. *appetentis*, adj. (90); *cupidus, a, um*.

eagerly, *cupidē*, adv.

eagerness, *cupiditās, cupiditātis*, f.

early, *mātūrē*, adv.; **in early times**,

antīquissimīs temporibus (*antīquissimus, a, um; tempus, temporis*, n.).

easily, *facile*, adv.

easy, *facilis, facile*, adj.

edict, *ēdictum, ēdictī*, n.

effect, *efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus*; **effect a retreat**, *pedem referō, referre, retulī, relātus* (210).

effects, *rēs, rērum*, f.; *bona, bonōrum*, n.

Egypt, *Aegyptus, Aegyptī*, f.

eight, *octō*, indecl. card. adj.

eighteen, *duodēvīgintī*, indecl. card. adj.

elder, *senior*, adj.; *nātū maior*.

elect, *dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus; creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus; faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*.

Elis, *Ēlis, Ēlidis*, f.

Elysium, *Ēlysium, Ēlysiī*, n.

eminent, *summus, a, um; ēgregius, a, um; clārus, a, um*.

employ, *negōtium dō, dare, dedī, datus* (*negōtium, negōtiī*, n.).

encircled with laurel, *laureātus, a, um*.

encounter, *adgredior, adgredī, adgressus sum*; **without encountering any resistance**, *nūllō impediente* (74).

enemy, *hostis, hostis*, m. and f.; *inimīcus, inimīcī*, m. and f.

enjoy, *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*, w. abl.; *fruor, fruī, frūctus sum*, w. abl.

enmity, *inimīcitia, inimīcitiae*, f.

enough, *satis*, adv. and indecl. adj.

enter, *intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus; ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum* w. prep. *intrā* and acc.

entertainer, *hospes, hospitis*, m. and f.

entrance, *aditus, aditūs*, m.

enumerate, *numerō, numerāre, numerāvī, numerātus; percurrō, percurrere, percucurrī* or *percurrī, percursus*.

envious, *invidiōsus, a, um*.

envoy, *invidia, ae*, f.; *invideō, invidēre, invīdī, invīsus*, w. dat. (42, 43).

Epaminondas, *Epamīnōndas, Epamīnōndae*, m.

Ephialtes, *Ephiāltēs, Ephiāltae*, m.

Epirus, *Epīrus, Epīrī*, f.

equestrian statue, *imāgō equitis* (*imāgō, imāginis*, f.; *eques, equitis*, m.).

equites, *equitēs, equitum*, m.

Erebus, *Erebus, Erebī*, m.

erect, *pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positvs; conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus* (198).

Erythrae, *Erythrae, Erythrārum*, f.; **of Erythrae**, *Erythraeus, a, um*.

escape, *ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus* with acc. of pers. or refl. pron.; **escape notice**, *lateō, latēre, latuī*, —.

especially, *praesertim*, adv.; *praecipuē*, adv.

Etruria, *Etrūria, Etrūriae*, f.

Euboea, *Euboea, Euboeae*, f.

Europe, *Eurōpa, Eurōpae*, f.

Eurotas, *Eurōtās, Eurōtae*, m.

even, *etiam*, conj. (330); **not even**, *nē . . . quidem* (305).

evening, *vesper, vesperī*, m.; *vesper, vesperis*, m.; *vespera, vesperae*, f.

ever = at any time, *umquam*, adv.; **ever = always**, *semper*; adv., *numquam nōn* (298).

everlasting, *sempiternus, a, um; aeternus, a, um.*

every, *quisque, quaeque, quidque, quicque* or *quodque*, indef. pron.; *omnis, omne*, adj. (155).

everywhere, *omnibus in partibus; ubīque*, adv.; *vulgō*, adv.

evidence, *indicium, indiciī*, n.

exactly, *ipse, a, um*, intens. pron. (128).

excel, *praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus*, w. acc.; *praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus*, w. dat.

except, *praeter*, prep. w. acc.

exceptional, *ēgregius, a, um; singulāris, singulāre.*

exceptionally, *ēgregiē*, adv.

exclaim, *clāmitō, clāmitāre, clāmitāvī, clāmitātus.*

excuse, *excūsō, excūsāre, excūsāvī, excūsātus;* **they excused themselves for coming**, *sē excūsābant quod vēnissent.*

exhibit, *ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus.*

exhort, *cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum.*

exile, *in exilium ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus* (*exsilium, exsiliī*, n.); **an exile**, *exsul, exsulis*, m.

expedient, *commodus, a, um; optimus, a, um.*

expel, *expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus.*

experience, *ūsus, ūsūs*, m.

exploits, *rēs gestae*, f. (*rēs, rērum*, f.; *gestī, ae, a*).

extend, *pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus.*

extraordinary, *singulāris, singulāre; ēgregius, a, um.*

eye-witness, *spectātor et testis* (18) (*spectātor, spectātōris*, m. and f.; *testis, testīs*, m. and f.).

F

Fabius, *Fabius, Fabī*, m.

face, *faciēs, faciēī*, f.; *vultus, vultūs*, m.; *ōs, ōris*, n.

fact, *rēs, reī*, f.; **in fact**, *rē;* **facts in the case**, *rēs ipsae*, gen., *rērum ipsārum.*

Faesulae, *Faesulae, Faesulārum*, f.

faithful, *fidēlis, fidēle; fīdus, a, um.*

faithfully, *fidēliter*, adv.; *dīligenter*, adv.

fall, *cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus;* **fall = drop**, *dēfluō, dēfluere, dēfluxī, dēfluxus.*

famous, *clārus, a, um; ille, a, ud*, demons. pron. (120).

far, *longē*, adv. (94).

farm, *praedium, praediī*, n.

farmer, *agricola, agricolae*, m.; **farmer of revenue**, *pūblicānus, pūblicānī*, m.

fasces, *fascēs, fascium*, m.

father, *pater, patris*, m.

fatherly, *patrius, a, um.*

favor, *beneficium, beneficiī*, n.; **favor = approve of**, *probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus;* **favor = support**, *faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus*, w. dat.

favorable, *opportūnus, a, um; idōneus, a, um.*

favorite = one especially loved, *praecipuē dīlēctus* (*praecipuē*, adv.; *dīlēctus*, perf. part. of *dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus*).

fear, *timor, timōris*, m.; *metus, metūs*, m.; *timeō, timēre, timuī, —;*

metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus; vereor, verērī, veritus sum.

fearlessly, *fortiter*, adv.

fearlessness, *fortitūdō, fortitūdinis*, f.

feast, *epulor, epulārī, epulātus sum*, w. abl.; *epulum, epulī*, sing. n.; *epulae, epulārum*, plu. f.; *cōmissātiō, cōmissātiōnis*, f.; *convīvium, convīviī*, n.

feel = think, *sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus;* **feel friendly,** *bonō animō sum, esse, fuī, futūrus;* **feel grateful,** *grātiam habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus;* **feel pity,** *miseret, miserēre, miseruit*, — (37); **feel sorry,** *paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit*, — (37); **feel sure,** *sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; nōn dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus.*

Felix, *Fēlīx, Fēlīcis*, m.

ferry, *cymba subvectō, subvectāre, subvectāvī, subvectātus* (*cymba, cymbae*, f.); *lintre trānsportō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātus* (*linter, lintris*, f.).

fetters, *catēnae, catēnārum*, f.; *compedēs, compedum*, m. and f.

few, *paucī, ae, a;* **very few,** *perpaucī, ae, a.*

fidelity, *fidēlitās, fidēlitātis*, f.

field, *ager, agrī*, m.

fiercely, *ācriter*, adv.

fifteen, *quīndecim*, indecl. card. adj.

fifth, *quīntus, a, um.*

fifty, *quīnquāgintā*, indecl. card. adj.

fight, *pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus; proelior, proeliārī, proeliātus sum.*

file = go one by one, *singulī, ae, a, eō, īre, iī, itus.*

fill with, *compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus.*

finally, *dēnique* (304).

find, *inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus; reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus;* **find out,** *cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.*

finish, *fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītus; cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus; perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus;* **give finishing touches,** *manūs extrēmās impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus.*

fire, *ignis, ignis*, m.

firm, *cōnstāns*, gen. *cōnstantis*, adj.

first, *prīmus, a, um; ūnus, a, um* (84); **at first,** *prīmō.*

fitted, *aptus, a, um; accommodātus, a, um.*

five, *quīnque*, indecl. card. adj.

fix, *fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus.*

flame, *flamma, flammae*, f.

Flaminian Way, *Flāminia via*, gen. *Flāminiae viae*, f.

flee, *fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus.*

fleet, *classis, classis*, f.

flourish, *flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī*, —.

flow, *fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus.*

flower, *flōs, flōris*, m.

fold of a toga, *sinus, sinūs*, m.

follow, *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum;* **as follows,** *hoc* (112).

following, *sequēns*, gen. *sequentis*, pres. part.; **on the following day,** *posterō diē; proximō diē; postrīdiē eius diēī.*

fond of, *cupidus, a, um; studiōsus, a, um;* **be fond of,** *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus; dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus.*

foolish, *stultus, a, um.*

foot, *pēs, pedis*, m.; **on foot**, *pedibus;* **foot of = lowest part of**, *īmus, a, um.*

foot-soldier, *pedes, peditis*, m.

for, *prō*, prep. w. abl. (314); *enim*, conj. (344–348).

forbid, *vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus.*

force, *vīs, vīs*, f.; *cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus; pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus;* **force one's way**, *per vim iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.*

forces, *cōpiae, cōpiārum*, f.

foreign, *aliēnus, a, um; peregrīnus, a, um.*

foreigners, *exterī, exterōrum*, m. and f.; *peregrīnī, peregrīnōrum*, m. and f.

forest, *silva, silvae*, f.

forget, *oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum.*

forgive, *condōnō, condōnāre, cōndōnāvī, condōnātus; īgnōscō, īgnōscere, īgnōvī, īgnōtus.*

form, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus;* **form a plan**, *cōnsilium ineō, inīre, iniī, initus* (*cōnsilium, cōnsilī*, n.).

former, *prior, prius.*

Formiae, *Formiae, Formiārum*, f.

forsake, *relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus; dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus.*

fortieth, *quadrāgēsimus, a, um.*

fortify, *mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus:* **most strongly fortified**, *mūnītissimus, a, um.*

fortunate, *fortūnātus, a, um; beātus, a, um; fēlīx*, gen. *fēlīcis.*

fortunes, *rēs, rērum*, f.; *bona, bonōrum*, n.

forty-ninth, *ūndēquīnquāgēsimus, a, um.*

Forum, *forum, forī*, n.

found, *condō, condere, condidī, conditus.*

four, *quattuor*, indecl. card. adj.

four hundred, *quadringentī, ae, a.*

fourteen, *quattuordecim*, indecl. card. adj.

fourth, *quārtus, a, um.*

free, *līber, lībera, līberum; līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus;* **free** (from debt), *dissolvō, dissolvere, dissolvī, dissolūtus.*

frequented, *celeber, celebris, celebre;* **much frequented**, *celeberrimus, a, um.*

frequently, *saepe*, adv.

friend, *amīcus, amīcī*, m. and f.

friendship, *amīcitia, amīcitiae, f.*

frighten, *terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus.*

frightful, *perhorrendus, a, um.*

from, *ā, ab, dē, ē, ex*, prep. w. abl. (318).

frost, *pruīna, pruīnae*, f.

full, *plēnus, a, um; complētus, a, um;* **full = loose**, *laxus, a, um.*

Furies, *furiae, furiārum*, f.

furthermore, *autem* (340).

future, *futūrus, a, um.*

G

Gabinius, *Aulus Gabīnius*, gen. *Aulī Gabīnī, m.*

gain, *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus;* **gain possession of**, *potior, potīrī, potītus sum* (79).

Gallic, *Gallicus, a, um.*

game, *lūdus, lūdī*, m.

garden, *hortus, hortī*, m.; *nemus, nemoris*, n.

garland, *sertum, sertī*, n.

gate, *porta, portae*, f.

Gaul, *Gallia, Galliae*, f.

Gauls, *Gallī, Gallōrum*, m.

general, *imperātor, imperātōris*, m.

gentle, *lēnis, lēne; mītis, mīte.*

Gentlemen of the Jury, *iūdicēs, iūdicum*, m.

get, *obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus;* **get rid of**, *interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus;* **get out of** = **escape**, *ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus*, w. acc. of reflex. pron.; **get together ships**, *nāvēs appellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus* (*nāvis, nāvis*, f.).

gift, *dōnum, dōnī*, n.; *mūnus, mūneris*, n.

gilt, *aurātus, a, um; aureus, a, um.*

girdle, *cīnctūra, cīnctūrae*, f.

girl, *puella, puellae*, f.

give, *dō, dare, dedī, datus; dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus;* **give advice**, *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus;* **give answers**, *respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus;* **give up** = **surrender**, *dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus; trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus;* **give up debtors**, *obaerātōs addīcō, addīcere, addīxī, addictus.*

Glabrio, *Glabriō, Glabriōnis*, m.

glad, *laetus, a, um* (189); **be glad**, *laetor, laetārī, laetātus sum; gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum.*

gliibness, *volūbilitās, volūbilitātis*, f.

gloomy, *tristis, triste; āter, ātra, ātrum.*

glory, *laus, laudis*, f.; *glōria, glōriae*, f.

go, *eō, īre, iī, itus;* **go away**, *abeō, abīre, abiī, abitus;* **go back**, *redeō, redīre, rediī, reditus;* **go down**, *dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus;* **go out**, *exeō, exīre, exiī, exitus;* **go on**, *geror, gerī, gestus sum.*

god, *deus, deī*, m.; **gods of the lower world**, *īnferī, īnferōrum*, m.

goddess, *dea, deae*, f.

golden, *aureus, a, um.*

good-by, God bless you, *amā nōs et valē et salvē.*

goodness, *bonitās, bonitātis*, f.

goods, *bona, bonōrum*, n.; *rēs, rērum*, f.

govern, *regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.*

governor, *propraetor, propraetōris*, m.

grain, *frūmentum, frūmentī*, n.

granary, *frūmentārium subsidium*, gen. *frūmentāriī subsidiī*, n.

grandfather, *avus, avī*, m.

grant permission, *concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus.*

great, *magnus, a, um;* **as great as**, *tantus, a, um . . . quantus, a, um.*

Grecians, *Graecī, Graecōrum*, m.

Greece, *Graecia, Graeciae*, f.

Greek, *Graecus, a, um.*

grieve at, *doleō, dolēre, doluī*, — (59).

groan, *gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitus.*

ground, *solum, solī*, n.; **on the ground**, *humī* (76).

groups of statuary, *imāginēs, imāginum*, f.; *statuae, statuārum*, f.

grove, *silva, silvae*, f.; **sacred grove**, *lūcus, lūcī*, m.

guard, *cūstos, cūstōdis*, m.; *praesidium, praesidiī*, n.; *cūstōdiō, cūstōdīre, cūstōdīvī, cūstōdītus;* **body-guard**, *praetōria cohors*, gen. *praetōriae cohortis*, f.

guest, *hospes, hospitis*, m. and f.

guide, *dux, ducis*, m. and f.; **under some one's guidance**, *aliquō duce*

(74); for the guidance of the boat, *quō cymbam subigat* (206); *subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus.*

guilty, *culpandus, a, um;* not guilty, *innocēns*, gen. *innocentis*, adj.

H

Halicarnassus, *Halicarnassus, Halicarnassī*, f.

hand, *manus, manūs*, f.; on the other hand, *autem* (340).

handsome, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*

hang, *dissideō, dissidēre, dissēdī, dissessus.*

Hannibal, *Hannibal, Hannibalis*, m.

happen, *fīō, fierī, factus sum; contingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus; accidō, accidere, accidī*, —.

happy, *fēlīx*, gen. *fēlīcis*, adj.; *beātus, a, um.*

harbor, *portus, portūs*, m.

hard, *difficilis, difficile.*

harm, *dētrīmentum, dētrīmentī*, n.; *noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus* (43).

harvest, *seges, segetis*, f.

hasten, *contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus; mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātus; properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus.*

hate, *ōdī, ōdisse.*

hatred, *ōdium, ōdiī*, n. (49).

haughtily, *superbē;* rather haughtily, *superbius* (88).

have, *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus;* have rights of citizens, *cīvium iūra teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus* (*iūs, iūris*, n.; *cīvis, cīvis*, m.); have much power, *multum possum, posse, potuī, —; multum valeō, valēre, valuī*, —; have faith in, *cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum; fidem habēre*, w. dat.; you have an opportunity to show, *habēs ubi ostentēs.*

he, *is; hīc; ille*, demons. pron.

head, *caput, capitis*, n.

hear, *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.*

hearsay, *audītiō, audītiōnis*, f.; "hearsay is no evidence," *fictīs audītiōnibus nōn crēdendum est.*

heart, *cor, cordis*, n.; heart of the city, *media urbs*, gen. *mediae urbis*, f. (95).

hearth, *focus, focī*, m.

heaven, *caelum, caelī*, n.

heavy, *gravis, grave.*

Hebe, *Hēbē, Hēbēs*, f.

Hector, *Hector, Hectoris*, m.

height, *altitūdō, altitūdinis*, f.

Helen, *Helena, Helenae*, f.

Hellespont, *Hellēspontus, Hellēspontī*, m.

help, *auxilium, auxiliī*, n. (49).

her, her own, *suus, a, um*, poss. pron. referring to the subject, but agreeing with the object possessed; *eius, huius*, or *illīus* may be used to express *her* not referring to the subject; *her*, a direct object, is to be expressed by the accusative, *eam, hanc*, or *illam.*

Heraclea, *Hēraclēa, Hēraclēae*, f.

Hercules, *Herculēs, Herculis*, m.

here, *hīc*, adv.; *in hōc locō.*

hero, *vir, virī*, m.; *hērōs, hērōis*, m.

Herodotus, *Hērodotus, Hērodotī*, m.

heroism, *fortitūdō, fortitūdinis*, f. (20).

hesitate, *dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātus.*

hesitation, *dubitātiō*, *dubitātiōnis*, f.; *recūsātiō*, *recūsātiōnis*, f.

high, *altus*, *a*, *um*; it's **high time**, *tandem aliquandō*.

highly, *altē*, adv.; *magnī*, adj. (34).

hill, *collis*, *collis*, m.

himself, *ipse*, intens. pron.; *sē*, reflex. pron.

Hipparchus, *Hipparchus*, *Hipparchī*, m.

Hippias, *Hippiās*, *Hippiae*, m.

his, his own, *suus*, *a*, *um*, poss. pron. referring to the subject, but agreeing with the object possessed; *eius*, *huius*, or *illīus* may be used to express *his*, not referring to the subject.

historian, *rērum gestārum scrīptor* (*rēs*, *reī*, f.; *gestus*, *a*, *um*; *scrīptor*, *scrīptōris*, m.).

hold, *teneō*, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *tentus*; *sustineō*, *sustinēre*, *sustinuī*, *sustentus*.

holy, *sānctus*, *a*, *um*.

home, *domus*, *domūs*, f.; **at home**, *domī* (76); **from home**, *domō* (76).

homesickness, *suōrum dēsīderium*, *aēsīderiī*, n.

honesty, *probitās*, *probitātis*, f.

honor, *honor*, *honōris*, m.; *pudor*, *pudōris*, m.; *decus*, *decoris*, n.; **in honor of**, *honōris causā* (29); **treat with honor** or **respect**, *summō honōre adficiō*, *adficere*, *adfēcī*, *adfectus*.

horse, *equus*, *equī*, m.

horseman, *eques*, *equitis*, m.

Hortensius, *Hortēnsius*, *Hortēnsī*, m.

host, *hospes*, *hospitis*, m.

hostage, *obses*, *obsidis*, m.

hostile, *inimīcus*, *a*, *um*.

house, *domus*, *domūs*, f.; *domicilium*, *domiciliī*, n.

how, *quō modo? quem ad modum?* **how many**, *quot? quam multi*, *ae*, *a?* **how hard**, *quam difficilis*, *difficile?*

however, *autem* (340).

humanity, *hūmānitās*, *hūmānitātis*, f.

hundred, *centum*, indecl. card. adj.

hundredth, *centēsimus*, *a*, *um*.

husband, *coniūnx*, *coniugis*, m.; *marītus*, *marītī*, m.

hurl, *dēiciō*, *dēicere*, *dēiēcī*, *dēiectus*; *contorqueō*, *contorquēre*, *contorsī*, *contortus*.

hut, *casa*, *casae*, f.

I

ice, *glaciēs*, *glaciēī*, f.

Ida, *Mōns Īda*, gen. *montis Īdae* (*mōns*, m.; *Īda*, f.).

if, *sī* (215); *sī* (170).

ill, *aeger*, *aegra*, *aegrum*.

illustrious, *clārus*, *a*, *um*; **illustrious warrior**, *perītissimus reī mīlitāris* (*mīlitāris*, *mīlitāre*).

imagine, *putō*, *putāre*, *putāvī*, *putātus*.

immediately, *statim*; *protinus*; *cōnfestim*.

immense, *ingēns*, gen. *ingentis*, adj.; *immānis*, *immāne*; *maximus*, *a*, *um*.

immortal, *immortālis*, *immortāle*.

impending = threatening, *mināns*, *minantis*, pres. part.; *impendēns impendentis*, pres. part.

imperator, *imperātor*, *imperātōris*, m.

implore, *implōrō*, *implōrāre*, *implorāvī*, *implōrātus*.

importance (of great), *magnī* (34; 38).
important, *magnus, a, um.*
impose, *impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus.*
imprisonment for life, *vincula et ea sempiterna* (*vinculum, vinculī,* n.; *is, ea, id; sempiternus, a, um*).
in, *in,* prep. w. abl. (319).
incense, *tūs, tūris,* n.
increase, *augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus,* trans.; *crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus,* intrans.
incredible, *incrēdibilis, incrēdibile.*
indicate, *indicō, indicāre, indicāvī, indicātus; doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus.*
indispensable, *necessārius, a, um.*
Indus, *Indus, Indī,* m.
inevitable, *nōn vītandus, a, um.*
infantry, *peditēs, peditum,* m.; *peditātus, peditātūs,* m.
inferior, *īnferior, īnferius.*
influence, *auctōritās, auctōritātis; addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus; permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus.*
influential, *potentissimus, a, um;* be **exceedingly influential,** *plūrimum possum, posse, potuī, —; plūrimum valeō, valēre, valuī, —.*
inform, *aliquem certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.*
inhabit, *incolō, incolere, incoluī, —.*
inhabitant, *incola, incolae,* m. and f.; *oppidānus, oppidānī,* m. and f.
injury, *iniūria, iniūriae,* f.
innocent, *innocēns, innocentis,* adj.
inquire, *quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus.*
inscribe, *īnscrībō, īnscrībere, īnscrīpsī, īnscrīptus.*
insolently, *arroganter,* adv.; *superbē,* adv.
institute, *īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus.*
intellect, *mēns, mentis,* f.; *ingenium, ingeniī,* n.
intend, *esse in animō,* w. dat. of possessor; **some one intends to go,** *alicui est in animō īre; aliquis itūrus est.*
interests, *rēs, rērum,* f.
interview, *conloquium, conloquiī,* n.
into, *in,* prep. w. acc.
intrust (the defense), *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus* (198).
invade, *invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus.*
invite, *invītō, invītāre, invītāvī, invītātus.*
island, *īnsula, īnsulae,* f.
it, *is, ea, id; hīc, haec, hoc; ille, illa, illud.*
Italica, *Ītalica, Ītalicae,* f.
Italy, *Ītalia, Ītaliae,* f.
its, *suus, a, um,* poss. pron. referring to the subject but agreeing with the object possessed; *eius, huius,* or *illīus* may be used to translate *its* not referring to the subject.

J

jealousy, *invidia, invidiae,* f.
jokingly, *rīdiculē,* adv.
Juba, *Iūba, Iūbae,* m.
judge, *iūdex, iūdicis,* m. and f.
Julius Caesar, *Gāius Iūlius Caesar,* gen. *Gāī Iūlī Caesaris,* m.
July, *Quīntīlis, e; Iūlius, a, um* (353).

Juno, *Iūnō, Iūnōnis*, f.
Jupiter, *Iuppiter, Iovis*, m.

K

keep back or from, *prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus;* keep in mind, *memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus;* keep saying, *dictitō, dictitāre, dictitāvī, dictitātus;* keep one's promise = do that which one promises that he will do (185).
kill, *interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus; occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus.*
kind, *genus, generis*, n.; *benīgnus, a, um;* kinds of torture, *exempla cruciātūsque* (18); what kind of? *quālis, quāle?* adj.; *quī, quae, quod?* inter. pron.
kindly disposed, *bonō animō* (72. 2).
kindness, *beneficium, beneficiī*, n. (20).
king, *rēx, rēgis*, m.
knight, *eques, equitis*, m.
know, *sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus; intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus;* best known, *nōtissimus, a, um.*

L

Laconia, *Lacōnia, Lacōniae*, f.
lake, *lacus, lacūs*, m.
land, *terra, terrae*, f.; *ager, agrī*, m.; *expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus; ē nāvī ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum;* on land and sea, *terrā marīque.*
Laocoön, *Lāocoōn, Lāocoontis*, m.
large, *magnus, a, um; ingēns*, gen. *ingentis*, adj.
lash, *verber, verberis*, n.; *verberibus excruciō, excruciāre, excruciāvī, excruciātus.*
last, *extrēmus, a, um; sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.*
late, *recēns*, gen. *recentis*, adj.; *tardus, a, um;* late in the day, *multō diē;* lately, *nuper;* a few years later, *paucīs post annīs* (60).
Latins, *Latīnī, Latīnōrum*, m.
latter, *hīc, haec, hoc*, demons. pron.; *alter, altera, alterum*, adj.; in latter part of life, *extrēmā vītā.*
Laurentum, *Laurentum, Laurentī*, n.
Lavinium, *Lāvīnium, Lāvīnī*, n.
law, *lēx, lēgis*, f.
lawful, *iūstus, a, um;* be lawful, *licet, licēre, licuit* or *licitum est.*
lay, *pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus;* lay waste, *vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vastātus;* lay aside, *dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus;* lay the case before the senate, *ad senātum referō, referre, rettulī, relātus.*
lead, *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus;* lead a life, *vītam vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus.*
lead, *plumbeus, a, um.*
leader, *dux, ducis*, m. and f.; *prīnceps, prīncipis*, m. and f.
leaf, *folium, foliī*, n.
learn, *discō, discere, didicī, —; cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.*
learned, *doctus, a, um; ēruaītus, a, um.*
leave, *relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitus; discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus;* leave in some one's charge, *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus; commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātus.*

left, *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.*
legion, *legiō, legiōnis*, f.
leisure, *ōtium, ōtiī*, n.
Lemnos, *Lemnus* or *Lemnos, Lemnī*, f.
length, *longitūdō, longitūdinis*, f.
Lentulus, *Lentulus, Lentulī*, m.
Leonidas, *Leōnidās, Leōnidae*, m.
less, *minor, minus* (92).
let, *sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs* (273).
Lethe (of), *Lēthaeus, a, um.*
letters, *litterae, litterārum*, f.; *epistolae, epistolārum*, f.
levy, *cōnscrībō, cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus.*
liberate, *līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus.*
liberty, *lībertās, lībertātis*, f.
lictor, *lictor, lictōris*, m.
lie, *iaceō, iacēre, iacuī*, —; **lie = is situated**, *pōnor, pōnī, positus sum.*
lieutenant, *lēgātus, lēgātī*, m.
life, *vīta, vītae*, f.
light, *lūx, lūcis*, f.
like, *similis, simile* (often used with gen. to express likeness in character; with dat. to express likeness in appearance).
likewise, *item*, adv.; *īdem, eadem, idem*, pron. of identity (130).
listen to, *audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.*
litter, *lectica, lecticae*, f.
little, *parvus, a, um;* **a little while after**, *paulō post* (60).
live, *vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus;* **live in**, *incolō, incolere, incoluī*, —.
living, *vīvus, a, um.*
load, *onus, oneris*, n.
lofty, *altus, a, um; ingēns*, gen. *ingentis*, adj.
long, *longus, a, um; diū*, adv.; **as long as**, *quam diū;* **how long?** *quam diū?* **so long**, *tam diū;* **not long after**, *paulō post* (60).
look for, *petō, petere, petīvī* (*petiī*), *petītus;* **look on**, *īnspectō, īnspectāre, īnspectāvī, īnspectātus;* **look upon = consider**, *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus.*
loose, *laxus, a, um.*
loosen, *solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus.*
lose, *amittō, amittere, amīsī, amissus; perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus;* **lose confidence**, *diffīdō, diffīdere, diffīsus sum;* **lose = be killed**, *interficior, interfici, interfectus sum.*
love, *amor, amōris*, m.; *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus; dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus.*
lovely, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.*
low, *humilis, humile*, adj.; **low price**, *parvum pretium*, gen. *parvī pretiī*, n.
lower world, *Orcus, Orcī*, m.; *Plūtōnis rēgna* (*Plūtō, Plūtōnis*, m.; *rēgnum, rēgnī*, n.).
loyal, *amantissimus, a, um.*
loyalty, *stūdium, stūdiī*, n.
Lucullus, *Lūcullus, Lūcullī*, m.
lull, *lēniō, lēnīre, lēnīvī, lēnītus;* **lull to sleep**, *efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus ut* w. subj. of *dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītus.*
lyre, *cithara, citharae*, f.

M

Macedon, *Macedonia, Macedoniae*, f.
Maecenas, *Maecēnas, Maecenātis*, m.
magistrate, *magistrātus, magistrātūs*, m.
magnificent, *magnificus, a, um; splendidus, a, um.*

make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus ;* be made, *fīō, fierī, factus sum ;* make a vow, *voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus ;* make a great mistake, *vehementer errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus ;* make a speech, *ōrātiōnem habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus ;* make a decree, *dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus ;* make up one's mind, *animum indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus ; cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus ;* make one's escape, *ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus,* with acc. of pers. or reflex. pron. ; make use of, *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum ; fruor, fruī, frūctus sum ;* make so many statements, *tot verba faciō, facere, fēcī, factus ;* make a place resound, *locum personō, personāre, personuī, personitus.*

man, *homō, hominis,* m. ; *vir, virī,* m.

manage, *administrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātus.*

Manlius, *Manlius, Manlī,* m.

Mantua, *Mantua, Mantuae,* f.

many, *multī, ae, a ;* as many as, *tot . . . quot ; tam multī, ae, a, . . . quam multī, ae, a ;* how many? *quot ? quam multi, ae, a ?*

Marathon, *Marathon, Marathōnis,* f. (acc. *Marathōna*) ; of Marathon, *Marathōnius, a, um.*

marble, *marmor, marmoris,* n.

March, *Mārtius, a, um* (353).

march, *iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus ; sīgna īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātus ; prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.*

Marcus, *Mārcus, Mārcī,* m.

Marius, *Gāius Marius,* gen. *Gāī Marī,* m.

market day, *nundina, nundinae,* f.

Marmarium, *Marmarium, Marmariī,* n.

Mars, *Mārs, Mārtis,* m.

Marsic, *Marsicus, a, um.*

Massilia, *Massilia, Massiliae,* f.

master (of slaves), *dominus, dominī,* m. ; master of horse, *magister equitum* (*magister, magistrī,* m. ; *eques, equitis,* m.).

matron, *māter, mātris ; mātrōna, mātrōnae,* f.

matter, *rēs, reī,* f.

Mausoleum, *Mausolēum, Mausolēī,* n.

Mausolus, *Mausōlus, Mausōlī,* m.

May, *Māius, a, um.*

may = be permitted, *licet, licēre, licuit* or *licitum est* (273).

means, *facultās, facultātis,* f. ; *pecūnia, pecūniae,* f. ; *rēs, reī,* f. ; by all means, *sānē,* adv. ; by no means, *minimē,* adv. ; what does it mean? *quid sibi vult?* he means to go = he intends to go, *ei est in animō īre ; itūrus est.*

meanwhile, *intereā,* adv.

measure, *rēs, reī,* f. ; *metior, metīrī, mēnsus sum ;* in some measure, *aliquam in partem.*

meet, *in aliquem incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsus ; conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventus.*

memory, *memoria, memoriae,* f.

Menelaus, *Menelāus, Menelāī,* m.

mention, *nōminō, nōmināre, nōminātus ; commemorō, commemorāre, commemorāvī, commemorātus.*

Mercury, *Mercurius, Mercurī,* m.

mercy, *misericordia, misericordiae,* f.

mere, *ipse, a, um,* intens. pron. (128).

Mesopotamia, *Mesopotamia, Mesopotamiae*, f.
messenger, *nūntius, nūntiī*, m. and f.
middle of, *medius, a, um.*
midnight, *media nox*, gen. *mediae noctis*, f.
mighty, *maximus, a, um; validus, a, um; ingēns, ingentis;* **mighty in stature = of immense size of body**, *ingentī corporis magnitūdine.*
mild, *lēnis, lēne*, opp. to *vehemēns*, gen. *vehementis; mītis, mīte*, opp. to *acerbus, a, um.*
mile, *mīlle passūs* or *passuum* (87).
millionaire, *opulentus homō* (*opulentus, a um; homō, hominis*, m.).
Milo, *Mīlō, Mīlōnis*, m.
Miltiades, *Miltiadēs, Miltiadis*, m.
mindful, *memor*, gen. *memoris*, adj.
Minerva, *Minerva, Minervae*, f.
Minores, *Minōrēs, Minōrum*, m.
Minos, *Mīnōs, Mīnōis*, m.
Minucius, *Minucius, Minucī*, m.
mistake, *errō, errāre, errāvī, errātus.*
Mithridates, *Mithridātēs, Mithridātis*, m.
monarch, *rēx, rēgis*, m.; **I am monarch of all I survey**, *rērum potior* (79).
money, *pecūnia, pecūniae*, f.
month, *mēnsis, mēnsis*, m.
monument, *monumentum, monumentī*, n.
moon, *lūna, lūnae*, f.
more, *plūs*, gen. *plūris; magis*, adv. (91).
mother, *māter, mātris*, f.
mount, *ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus.*
mountain, *mōns, montis*, m.
mourn, *doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitus;* **wear mourning**, *lūgeō, lūgere, lūxī, lūctus.*
mouth, *ōs, ōris*, n.
move, *moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus;* **move back** (into a house), *remigrō, remigrāre, remigrāvī, remigrātus.*
much, *multus, a, um.*
multitude, *multitūdō, multitūdinis*, f.
Mulvian, *Mulvius, a, um.*
municipia, *mūnicipia, mūnicipiōrum*, n.
murder, *necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus.*
Murena, *Murēna, Murēnae*, m.
murmur (of approval), *admurmurātiō, admurmurātiōnis*, f.
Muses, *Mūsae, Musārum*, f.
myrtle, *myrtus, myrtī*, f.; *myrtus, myrtūs*, f.

N

name, *nōmen, nōminis*, n.
Naples, *Neāpolis, Neāpolis*, f.
narrow, *angustus, a, um.*
nation, *nātiō, nātiōnis*, f.; *gēns, gentis*, f.
naturally, *nātūrā* (abl. of *nātūra*).
nature, *nātūra, nāturae*, f.
near, *ad*, prep. w. acc.; **be near at hand**, *īnstō, īnstāre, īnstitī, īnstātus.*
nectar, *nectar, nectaris*, n.
need, *opus*, indecl. noun; **there is need of**, *opus est*, w. abl.; **need we say?** *dīcāmus?*
neither ... nor, *neque* or *nec ... neque.*
Neptune, *Neptūnus, Neptūnī*, m.
never, *numquam*, adv.
new, *novus, a, um* (16; 158).
Nexi, *Nexī, Nexōrum*, m.
next, *proximus, a, um;* **next day = on the next day**, *posterō diē; proximō diē; postrīdiē eius diēī.*

Nicomedes, *Nīcomēdes, Nīcomēdis*, m.
night, *nox, noctis*, f.; **at night**, *noctū*; **night and day**, *noctēs diēsque* (52); **in the dead of night**, *mediā nocte*.
nine, *novem*, indecl. card. adj.
nine hundred, *nōngentī, ae, a*.
no, *nūllus, a, um*; **no one**, *nēmō*, gen. *nūllīus*; **no longer**, *nōn diūtius*.
noble, *nōbilis, nōbile*, adj.; **of noble birth**, *nōbilī locō*.
nobles, *nōbilitās, nōbilitātis*, f.; *nōbilēs, nōbilium*, m.
not, *nōn* (292–300); **not even**, *nē . . . quidem* (305); **not only . . . but also**, *nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam* (343); **not at all**, *nihil* (55).
nothing, *nihil*, indecl. noun.
notice, *animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus; sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus*.
notwithstanding, *tamen* (342); **notwithstanding their objections**, *hīs repugnantibus* (74).
November, *November, Novembris, Novembre* (353).
now, *iam*, adv.; *nunc*, adv.; *hōc tempore; Quid? Quid est* (163).
nowadays, *hīs temporibus; hīs diēbus* (78).
Nox, *Nox, Noctis*, f.
number, *numerus, numerī*, m.

O

oak, *quercus, quercūs*, f.; **crown of oak leaves**, *corōna facta ē fronde quernā*.
obaeratī, *obaerātī, obaerātōrum*, m.
obedience, *obtemperātiō, obtemperātiōnis*, f.
obey, *pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritus*.
obolus, *obolus, obolī*, m.
obstacle, *impedīmentum, impedīmentī*, n. (49).
obtain security, *vindicem* or *exprōmissōrem reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus*; **obtain right of citizenship**, *iūra teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus*.
occasion, *tempus, temporis*, n.; *causa, causae*, f.; *occāsiō, occāsiōnis*, f.
occasionally, *nōnnumquam*, adv.
occupied (be), *versor, versārī, versātus sum*.
Octavianus, *Octāviānus, Octāviānī*, m.
October, *Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre* (353).
office, *officium, officiī*, n.; *cūra, cūrae*, f.; **his office is**, *eī cūrae est* (49).
often, *saepe*, adv.
oil, *oleum, oleī*, n.
old, *vetus*, gen. *veteris*, adj.; *antīquus, a, um*.
Olympia, *Olympia, Olympiae*, f.
Olympus, *Olympus, Olympī*, m.
on, *in*, prep. w. acc. and abl. (321); **on this side of**, *cis*, prep. w. acc.
once, *semel*, adv.; **at once**, *statim*, adv.; **once in a while**, *nōnnumquam*, adv.; **once upon a time**, *quondam*, adv.
one, *ūnus, a, um* (81–83), gen. *ūnīus*, dat. *ūnī*.
only, *sōlus, a, um*; gen. *sōlīus*, dat. *sōlī*.
open, *aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus*.
openly, *apertē*, adv.; *palam*, adv.
opinion, *sententia, sententiae*, f.
Oppius, *Oppius, Oppī*, m.
opportunity, *occāsiō, occāsiōnis*, f.; *facultās, facultātis*, f.

oppose, *reclāmō, reclāmāre, reclāmāvī, reclāmātus;* *repugnō, repugnāre, repugnāvī, repugnātus;* **oppose a law**, *obtrēctō, obtrēctāre, obtrēctāvī, obtrēctātus;* **oppose (an advance)**, *prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus* (275).

opposite, *adversus, a, um;* *contrā*, prep. w. acc.

or, *aut;* *vel* (164; 165; 171; 332–337); **or rather**, *vel potius.*

oracle, *ōrāculum, ōrāculī*, n.

order, *iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus* (282); noun, *iussus, iussūs*, m.; *imperātum, imperātī*, n.

ordinary, *mediocris, mediocre;* **no ordinary man**, *haud mediocris vir.*

ornament, *ōrnāmentum, ōrnāmentī*, n.

Orpheus, *Orpheus, Orpheī*, m.

other, *alius, a, ud;* gen. *alīus*, dat. *aliī;* **the other**, *alter, altera, alterum.*

ought = owe, *dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus* (273).

our, *noster, nostra, nostrum*, poss. pron. agreeing w. object possessed.

out of, *ē* or *ex*, prep. w. abl.

over, *per*, prep. w. acc.; *trāns*, prep. w. acc.; *suprā*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. acc. or abl.

overlook = see over, *cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspēxī, cōnspectus.*

overrun, *percurrō, percurrere, percurrī, percursus.*

overtake, *cōnsequor, cōnsequī, consecūtus sum.*

P

palace, *palātium, palātiī*, n.

Palatine, *Palātium, Palātiī*, n.; *Palātīnus, a, um.*

paludamentum, *palūdāmentum, palūdāmentī*, n.

panic-stricken, *perterritus, a, um.*

paralyze, *obstupefaciō, obstupefacere, obstupefēcī, obstupefactus.*

pardon, *condōnō, condōnāre, condōnāvī, condōnātus;* *īgnōscō, īgnōscere, īgnōvī, īgnōtus.*

Parian, *Parius, a, um;* **Parian marble**, *Parius lapis*, gen. *Parīī lapidis*, m.

Paris, *Paris, Paridis*, m.

park, *nemus, nemoris*, n.

part, *pars, partis*, f.; **on his part**, *ipse*, intens. pron. (128).

participant, *particeps, participis*, m. and f.

party, *factiō, factiōnis*, f.; **one party, the other party**, *alterī . . . alterī* (83).

pass, *saltus, saltūs*, m.; **pass judgment**, *iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus;* **pass (a law)**, *dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus.*

past, *praeter*, prep. w. acc.; **the past**, *praeterita, praeteritōrum*, n.

path, *via, viae*, f.; *sēmita, sēmitae*, f.

patres, *patrēs, patrum*, m.

patricians, *patriciī, patriciōrum*, m.

patron, *patrōnus, patrōnī*, m.

Paulus Aemilius, *Paulus Aemilius*, gen. *Paulī Aemilī*, m.

pay, *pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus.*

peace, *pāx, pācis*, f.; **peaceful state of affairs**, *tranquillitās, tranquillitātis*, f.

peaceable, *lēnis, lēne*, adj.; *plācābilis, plācābile*, adj.

Peloponnesus, *Peloponnēsus, Peloponnēsī*, f.

people, *populus, populī*, m.; *plēbs, plēbis*, f.; *plēbēs, plēbeī*, f.
perfect, *poliō, polīre, polīvī, polītus*.
perhaps, *fortāsse*, adv.
Periander, *Periander, Periandrī*, m.
Pericles, *Periclēs, Periclis*, m.
perpetual, *aeternus, a, um; perpetuus, a, um; sempiternus, a, um*.
perseverance, *adsiduitās, adsiduitātis*, f.
Persian, *Persicus, a, um*.
Persians, *Persae, Persārum*, m.
personally conduct, *ipse dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus* (128).
persuade, *persuadeō, persuadēre, persuāsī, persuāsus*.
Philip, *Philippus, Philippī*, m.
Phocis, *Phōcis, Phōcidis*, f.
Phrygia, *Phrygia, Phrygiae*, f.
pillar, *columna, columnae*, f.
Pindar, *Pindarus, Pindarī*, m.
pious, *pius, a, um*.
pipe, *tubus, tubī*, m.
pirate, *praedō, praedōnis*, m.
Pisa, *Pīsae, Pīsārum*, f.
Pisistratus, *Pisistratus, Pisistratī*, m.
Pittacus, *Pittacus* or *Pittacos, Pittacī*, m.
pity, *miserīcordia, miserīcordiae*, f.; *miseret, miserēre, miseruit* (37).
placate, *plācō, plācāre, plācāvī, plācātus*.
place, *locus, locī*, m. in sing., m. and n. in plu.; *pars, partis*, f.; *pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus*.
plain, *clārus, a, um; valles* or *vallis, vallis*, f.
plainly, *apertē*, adv.; *plānē*, adv.
plan, *rēs, reī*, f.; *cōnsilium, cōnsiliī*, n.
Plataeans, *Plataeēnsēs, Plataeēnsium*, m.
Plaucius, *Plaucius, Plaucī*, m.
play, *lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus*; **play the harp**, *citharā personō, personāre, personuī, personitus*.
pleasant, *iūcundus, a, um*.
please, *dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātus*, w. acc.; *placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus*, w. dat.
plebeian, *plēbēius, a, um*; noun, *plēbēius, plēbēiī*, m.
plebeians, *plēbs, plēbis*, f.; *plēbēs, plēbeī*, f.
plow, *arātrum, arātrī*, n.; *arō, arāre, arāvī, arātus*.
Pluto, *Plūtōn, Plūtōnis*, m.
poem, *poēma, poēmatis*, n.
poet, *poēta, poētae*, m.
point out, *mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus*.
pole, *contus, contī*, m.; **long pole**, *longurius, longuriī*, m.
Pompey, *Gnaeus Pompeius*, gen. *Gnaeī Pompēī*, m.
Pomponius, *Pomponius, Pomponī*, m.
Pontifex, *Pontifex, Pontificis*, m.
Pontus, *Pontus, Pontī*, m.
poor, *pauper, pauperis*, adj.
port, *portus, portūs*, m.
pour, *fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus*; **pour a libation**, *lībō, lībāre, lībāvī, lībātus*.
power, *potestās, potestātis*, f.; **power (of dictator)**, *imperium, imperiī*, n.
powerful, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*, adj.
practical experience, *ūsus, ūsūs*, m. (96).
praefectura, *praefectūra, praefectūrae*, f.
praetor, *praetor, praetōris*, m.
praise, *laus, laudis*, f.; *laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus*.

prayers, *precēs, precum*, f. (nom. and gen. sing. not used); **of a prayer**, *in prece.*

precedent, *exemplum, exemplī*, n.

prefer, *mālō, mālle, māluī*, —.

prepare, *parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus;* **well prepared**, *parātissimus, a, um;* **all Greece was astir with preparation**, *tōtā Graeciā comparābātur.*

present, *dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus; offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus;* noun, *dōnum, ī*, n.; *mūnus, mūneris*, n.; **be present**, *adsum, adesse, adfuī*, —; **in presence of**, *apud*, prep. w. acc.; *cōram*, prep. w. abl.; **in presence of somebody**, *aliquō praesente* (74).

preserve, *cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus.*

preside over court, *iūdicium exerceō, exercēre, exercui, exercitus.*

presume, *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus.*

pretend, *simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātus.*

prevent, *dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus* (275).

previously arranged plan, *ante initum cōnsilium* (*ante*, adv.; *initus, a, um; cōnsilium, cōnsiliī*, n.).

Priam, *Priamus, Priamī*, m.

price, *pretium, pretiī*, n.

priest, priestess, *sacerdōs, sacerdōtis*, m. and f.

prison, *carcer, carceris*, m.

prisoner, *captīvus, captīvī*, m.

private, *prīvātus, a, um.*

prize, *mūnus, mūneris*, n.

proconsul, *prōcōnsul, prōcōnsulis*, m.

prohibit, *prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus.*

promise, *polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum; prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī, prōmissus.*

prompted by, *ob*, prep. w. acc.; *propter*, prep. w. acc. (287).

prophet, *vātēs, vātis*, m. and f.

propose a law, *prōmulgō, prōmulgāre, prōmulgāvī, prōmulgātus.*

Proserpina, *Prōserpina, Prōserpinae*, f.

protect, *cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus* (49).

protection, *praesidium, praesidiī*, n.

prove, *dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātus;* **prove an advantage**, *bonō sum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (49).

proverbial, *fāmā trāditus, a, um* (*fāma, fāmae*, f.; *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus*).

provided, *dum*, conj.; *dum modo*, conj. (267).

province, *prōvincia, prōvinciae*, f.

provisions, *cibāria, cibāriōrum*, n.; **ground provisions**, *cibāria molita* (*molō, molere, moluī, molitus*); **provision has been made**, *prōvīsum est* (16).

public, *pūblicus, a, um.*

pull up, *convellō, convellere, convellī, convulsus.*

punishment, *poena, poenae*, f.; *supplicium, supplicīī*, n.; **inflict punishment on**, *sūmere supplicium dē*, w. abl. (*sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus*); capital punishment suggests punishing with death, *morte multō, multāre, multāvī, multātus.*

purple, *purpura, purpurae,* f.; *purpureus, a, um.*

purpose, *causa, causae,* f.; *rēs, reī,* f.; the purpose of a journey = why the journey is made.

pursue, *persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum;* be in close pursuit, *subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus sum.*

put, *pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus;* put on toga, *induō, induere, induī, indūtus;* put on veil, *nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus;* put (into cases), *dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus;* put to death, *morte multō, multāre, multāvī, multātus; ad mortem addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductus; interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus.*

Pyrenees, *Pȳrēnaeī, Pȳrēnaeōrum,* m.

Pythia, *Pȳthia, Pȳthiae,* f.

Pythius, *Pȳthius, Pȳthī,* m.

Pytho, *Pȳtho, Pȳthūs,* f.

Q

quaestor, *quaestor, quaestōris,* m.

qualities, *rēs, rērum,* f.

quarter, *pars, partis,* f.; quarters = tent, *tabernāculum, tabernāculī,* n.

queen, *rēgīna, rēgīnae,* f.

question, *rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus; quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesitus;* ask many questions, *multa rogāre* or *quaerere.*

quickly, *celeriter,* adv.

Quintus, *Quīntus, Quīntī,* m.

quorum, *numerus lēgitimus,* gen. *numerī lēgitimī,* m.

R

race, *genus, generis,* n.; *gēns, gentis,* f.

raise, *tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus;* raise an army, *exercitum cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus;* raise = erect, *pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus.*

rampart, *vāllum, vāllī,* n.

rancid, *amārus, a, um.*

rank, *ōrdō, ōrdinis,* m.; rank = line of an army, *aciēs, aciēī,* f.

rapidity, *celeritās, celeritātis,* f.

rapidly, *celeriter.*

reach a place, *perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventus,* w. *in* and acc.

read, *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus.*

ready, *parātus, a, um.*

real, *vērus, a, um.*

reality, *rēs, reī,* f.

realize, *sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus; intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus.*

realm, *rēgnum, rēgnī,* n.

rear, *āgmen novissimum,* gen. *āgminis novissimī,* n.

reason, *causa, causae,* f.; *rēs, reī,* f.; for this reason, *quā dē causā* (69).

rebuild, *restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus.*

recall, *revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātus.*

receive, *accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus;* receive advice, *moneor, monērī, monitus sum;* receive punishment, *supplicium sūmī dē* w. abl. (*sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus*).

recent, *recēns,* gen. *recentis,* adj.

reckon, *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus; habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus; putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus.*

recline, *accubō, accubāre, —, —.*

recommend, *moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.*

recover, *recipiō, recipere, recēpī, re-*

ceptus; recuperō, recuperāre, recuperāvī, recuperātus.

reduce, *minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus;* reduce to the form of a province, *in prōvinciam redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus.*

reflect, *cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus.*

refuse, *recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus* (276).

regard, *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus.*

region, *regiō, regiōnis,* f.

regret, *paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit* (37).

reign, *rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātus.*

remain, *maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus; contineō, continēre, continuī, contentus,* w. acc. of reflex. pron.; remain unnoticed, *lateō, latēre, latuī,* —; it remains to be said, *restat* or *reliquum est ut dīcātur.*

remaining, *reliquus, a, um.*

remarkable, *ēgregius, a, um; singulāris, singulāre.*

remedy, *medeor, medērī,* —.

remember, *memoriā teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus; meminī, meminisse,* —; *reminīscor, reminīscī,* —; remember me to the children, *puerīs salūtem dīcitō* (177).

render a verdict, *iūdicō, iūdicāre, iūdicāvī, iūdicātus.*

renowned, *clārus, a, um.*

repeatedly, *saepissimē; semel atque iterum; etiam atque etiam.*

repent, *paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit* (37).

reply to questions, *respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus ad rogāta.*

report, *nūntius, nūntiī,* m.; *nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus.*

represent, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.*

republic, *rēspūblica, reīpūblicae,* f.

require, *postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātus;* as occasion requires, *ut rēs expostulat.*

requite, *grātiam referō, referre, retulī, relātus.*

resign, *abdicō, abdicāre, abdicāvī, abdicātus,* w. acc. of pers. pron. and abl. of separation.

resist, *resistō, resistere, restitī,* —.

resolution, *animī magnitūdō, magnitūdinis,* f.

respectable, *bonus, a, um.*

rest, *quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus; cēterī, ae, a; reliquus, a, um;* rest assured, *scītō* (175).

restore, *restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus; reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus;* restore peace, *stabiliō, stabilīre, stabilīvī, stabilītus.*

result of this is, *hīs rēbus fit; quō fit.*

return, *redeō, redīre, rediī, reditus; revertor, revertī, reversus sum; reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus.*

reward, *mūnus, mūneris,* n.; *remūnerō, remūnerāre, remūnerāvī, remūnerātus.*

rewrite, *rescrībō, rescrībere, rescrīpsī, rescrīptus.*

Rhadamanthus, *Rhadamanthus, Rhadamanthī,* m.

Rhone, *Rhodanus, Rhodanī,* m.

rich, *dīves,* gen. *dīvitis,* adj., or *dīs,* gen. *dītis,* adj.

rid, *prōiciō, prōicere, proiēcī, prōiectus forās.*

ride, *in equō eō, īre, iī, itus.*

ridicule, *rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus.*

right, *dexter, dextra* or *dextera, dextrum* or *dexterum;* divine right, *fās,* indecl. noun; human right, *iūs, iūris,* n.
rise, *surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus.*
risk, *perīculum, perīculī,* n.; at one's risk, *suō perīculō.*
river, *flūmen, flūminis,* n.
road, *iter, itineris,* n.; *via, viae,* f.
robe, *toga, togae,* f.; *vestis, vestis,* f.
roll, *volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus.*
Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um;* Romans, *Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum,* m.
Rome, *Rōma, Rōmae,* f.
Romulus, *Rōmulus, Rōmulī,* m.
roof, *tēctum, tēctī,* n.
rostra, *rōstrum, rōstrī,* n.
rough-looking, *squālidus, a, um.*
rout, *fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus.*
ruin, *exitium, exitiī,* n.
run, *currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus;* run away, *fugiō, fugere, fūgī, —;* *tergum vertō, vertere, vertī, versus;* run down, *dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dēcucurrī* or *dēcurrī, dēcursus.*
rush forward, *prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prōcucurrī* or *prōcurrī, prōcursus.*
rustle, *crepitō, crepitāre, crepitāvī, crepitātus.*

S

sacred, *sacer, sacra, sacrum; sānctus, a, um.*
sacrifice, *sacrum, sacrī,* n.
safe, *incolumis, incolume; tūtus, a, um; salvus, a, um.*
safeguard, *praesidium, praesidiī,* n.; *tūtāmen, tūtāminis,* n.
safety, *salūs, salūtis,* f.
sagum, *sagum, sagī,* n.
Saguntum, *Saguntum, Saguntī,* n.
sail, *nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātus; nāvem cōnscendō, cōnscendere, cōnscendī, cōnscēnsus.*
salute, *salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātus.*
same, *īdem, eadem, idem.*
Sanga, *Quīntus Fabius Sanga,* gen. *Quīntī Fabī Sangae,* m.
Sardinia, *Sardinia, Sardiniae,* f.
Sardis, *Sardēs, Sardium,* f.
save, *cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus.*
say, *dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus.*
scarcely, *vix,* adv.
scatter, *spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus; dīspergō, dīspergere, dīspersī, dīspersus.*
scheme, *cōnsilium, cōnsiliī,* n.; *dolus, dolī,* m.
scoundrel, *vir nēquissimus,* gen. *virī nequissimī,* m.; *scelerātus, scelerātī,* m.; *facinorōsus, facinorōsī,* m.
sea, *mare, maris,* n.; *pelagus, pelagī,* n.
seashore, *ōra, ōrae,* f.
season, *tempus annī* (*tempus, temporis,* n.; *annus, annī,* m.).
secure, *tūtus, a, um.*
see, *videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus.*
seek for, *quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus.*
seem, *videor, vidērī, vīsus sum.*
seize, *comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus.*
seldom, *minimē saepe.*
self, *ipse, a, um* (127); for self-preservation, *suī conservandī causā* (40).
sell, *vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus.*
senate, *senātus, senātūs,* m.

senator, *senātor, senātōris*, m.
send, *mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus.*
sensible, *prūdēns*, gen. *prūdentis*, adj.
sensibly, *prūdenter*, adv.; act sensibly, *prūdenter agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*
serious, *tantus, a, um; gravis, grave.*
serpent, *serpēns, serpentis*, m. and f.; *anguis, anguis*, m. and f.
set out = start, *proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum;* set out = plant, *serō, serere, sēvī, satus.*
seven, *septem*, indecl. card. adj.
seven hundred, *septingentī, ae, a.*
seventeen, *septendecim*, indecl. card. adj.
seventh, *septimus, a, um.*
seventy, *septuāgintā*, indecl. card. adj.
severe, *sevērus, a, um; gravis, grave.*
sewer, *cloāca, cloācae*, f.
shape, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus;* shape a course to circumstances, *temporī cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus.*
sharply, *ācriter.*
she, *haec; ea; illa.*
ship, *nāvis, nāvis*, f.; war ship, *nāvis longa*, gen. *nāvis longae*, f.
shore, *lītus, lītoris*, n.
shoulder, *umerus, umerī*, m.
shout, *clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātus;* noun, *clāmor, clāmōris*, m.
show, *mōnstrō, monstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus; ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus;* show (courage), *praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus*, w. acc.
shrewd, *callidus, a, um; sagāx*, gen. *sagācis*, adj.
shudder, *horreō, horrēre, horruī*, —.
shut, *claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus.*
Sibyl, *Sibylla, Sibyllae*, f.
Sibylline, *Sibyllīnus, a, um.*
Sicily, *Sicilia, Siciliae*, f.
side, *latus, lateris*, n.; be on the side of, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*, w. gen.
siege, *oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis*, f.
sign, *sīgnum, signī*, n.; *īnsīgne, īnsīgnis*, n.
signal, *sīgnum, sīgnī*, n.
silence, *silentium, silentiī*, n.; be silent, *taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus; sileō, silēre, siluī, —; quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus.*
since, *cum; quoniam; quod* (252–259).
sing, *canō, canere, cecinī*, —.
sink, *submergō, submergere, submersī, submersus.*
Sinope, *Sinōpē, Sinōpis*, f.
sit, *sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus.*
situated, *positus, a, um.*
six, *sex*, indecl. card. adj.; six hundred, *sescentī, ae, a;* sixteen, *sēdecim*, indecl. card. adj.; sixty, *sexāginta*, indecl. card. adj.; sixtieth, *sexāgēsimus, a, um.*
size, *magnitūdō, magnitūdinis*, f.
slaughter, *trucīdō, trucīdāre, trucīdāvī, trucīdātus.*
slave, *servus, servī*, m.
sleep, *dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītus.*
slippery, *lūbricus, a, um.*
slow, *tardus, a, um.*
slowly, *tardē*, adv.
small, *parvus, a, um.*
smear, *spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus.*
smoking, *incendēns, incendentis*, pres. part.
snow, *nix, nivis*, f.; snow-white, *niveus, a, um.*
so, *sīc; ita; tam;* as . . . so, *ut . . . ita;*

so great, so much, *tantus, a, um;* so greatly, *tantopere;* so many, *tot; tam multī, ae, a;* so to speak, *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam* or *quoddam* (154).

soldier, *mīles, mīlitis,* m.

Solon, *Solon, Solōnis,* m.

some, *aliquis* or *aliquī, aliqua, aliquid* or *aliquod,* indef. pron.; there are some who, *sunt quī* w. subjunc.; some day, *aliquandō,* adv.

son, *filius, fīlī,* m.; *nātus, nātī,* m.; son-in-law, *gener, generī,* m.

soon, *mox,* adv.; as soon as, *cum prīmum* (240–243); as soon as possible, *quam prīmum* (94).

sorrow, *dolor, dolōris,* m.; general sorrow, *omnium dolor.*

sorrowful, *dolēns,* gen. *dolentis,* pres. part.; *flēns,* gen. *flentis,* pres. part.

sorry, *magnō dolōre affectus* (*afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus*).

sound, *sonus, sonī,* m.; *sonitus, ūs,* m.; sound the trumpet = give the signal with the trumpet.

space, *spatium, spatiī,* n.

Spain, *Hispānia, Hispāniae,* f.

spare, *parcō, parcere, pepercī* or *parsī, parcitus* or *parsus;* spare one's feelings, *animum nōn offendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus.*

Sparta, *Sparta, Spartae,* f.

Spartans, *Lacedaemoniī, Lacedaemoniōrum,* m.

speak with, *conloquor, conloquī, conlocūtus sum.*

special, *certus, a, um; singulī, ae, a.*

speech, *ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis,* f.; *sermō, sermōnis,* m.

spend (time), *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*

spirit, *anima, animae,* f.

spring, *vēr, vēris,* n.; in the spring, *vēre* (78).

stake, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*

stand, *stō, stāre, stetī, status;* stand = endure, *perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus;* stand = allow, suffer, *patior, patī, passus sum;* stand ready, *paror, pararī, parātus sum.*

standard, *sīgnum, sīgnī,* n.

standard bearer, *sīgnifer, sīgniferī,* m.

state, *cīvitās, cīvitātis,* f.; *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,* f.; state of affairs, *rēs, reī,* f.; state a case, *expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus; dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus.*

statesman, *quī in rē pūblica dīrigendā versātur.*

Statilius, *Statilius, Statilī,* m.

station, *cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus.*

statue, *statua, statuae,* f.; *imāgō, imāginis,* f.; under Apollo's statue, *sub basī Apollinis* (*basis, basis,* f.).

steep, *arduus, a, um; praeceps, praecipitis,* adj.

step, *pēs, pedis,* m.; step on, *ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum,* w. acc.

stir up, *īnstīgō, īnstīgāre, īnstīgāvī, īnstīgātus.*

stola, *stola, stolae,* f.

stone, *lapis, lapidis,* m.; *saxum, saxī,* n.; *rūpēs, rūpis,* f.

stop, *dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitus;* stop = delay, *moror, morārī, morātus sum.*

storm, *tempestās, tempestātis,* f.

strange, *mīrus, a, um; mīrābilis, mīrābile,* adj.

stranger, *hospes, hospitis,* m. and f.

strength, *rōbur, rōboris,* n.; *vīrēs, vīrium,* f.

strike, *icō, icere, īcī, ictus; laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus.*

strong, *potēns,* gen. *potentis,* adj.; *rōbustus, a, um; fīrmus, a, um.*

subdue, *pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus.*

succeed = follow, *succēdō, succēdere, successī, successus,* w. dat.

such, *is, ea, id; tālis, tāle;* such . . . as, *is, ea, id, . . . quī, quae, quod; tālis, tale, . . . quālis, quāle; tantus, a, um, . . . quantus, a, um.*

suffer from, *perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus,* w. acc.

suitable, *idōneus, a, um.*

suitor, *marītus, marītī,* m.

Sulla, *Sulla, Sullae,* m.

sum of money, *pecūnia, pecūniae,* f.; sum up, *conclūdō conclūdere, conclūsī, conclūsus* (189).

summer, *aestās, aestātis,* f.

summit, *summus, a, um* (95).

summon, *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus.*

sun, *sōl, sōlis,* m.; at sunset, *sōlis occāsū.*

superior, *superior, superius,* adj.

superstitious fear, *religiō et metus* (97) (*religiō, religiōnis,* f.; *metus, metūs,* m.).

supplies, *commeātus, commeātūs,* m.

suppose, *putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus.*

supreme power, *summum imperium,* gen. *summī imperiī,* n.

surname, *cōgnōmen, cōgnōminis,* n.

surpass, *praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus,* w. dat.; *praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessī, praecessus,* w. acc.

surprised, *mīrātus, a, um* (*mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum*).

surrender, *dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus.*

surround, *circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventus.*

suspect, *suspiciō, suspicere, suspēxī, suspectus; suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum.*

suspicion, *suspiciō, suspiciōnis,* f.

suspicious, *suspiciōsus, a, um; suspicāx,* gen. *suspicācis,* adj.

swift, *celer, celeris, celere.*

swiftness, *celeritās, celeritātis,* f.

symbol, *īnsīgne, īnsīgnis,* n.

Syria, *Syria, Syriae,* f.

T

tables, *tabulae, tabulārum,* f.

take, *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus;* take away, *tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus;* take an oath, *iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātus* (54); take side of, *sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,* w. gen. (33); take vengeance on, *supplicium sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus,* w. *dē* and abl.; take a long time, *longum esse;* take a seat, *assideō, assidēre, assēdī, assessus;* take a city, *expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus;* take charge of army, *imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus;* take pains to adjust the toga, *togam compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositus.*

tame, *domō, domāre, domuī, domitus.*

Tarquinius Superbus, *Tarquinius Superbus,* gen. *Tarquinī Superbī,* m.

Tarquins, *Tarquiniī, Tarquiniōrum,* m.

Tartarus, *Tartarus, Tartarī,* m.; plu. *Tartara, Tartarōrum,* n.

taxes, *stīpendium, stīpendiī,* n.; *vectīgal, vectīgālis,* n.

teach, *doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus.*
tear, *lacrima, lacrimae*, f.
tell, *nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus; nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus; patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus.*
tempest, *tempestās, tempestātis*, f.
temple, *templum, templī*, n.; *fānum, fānī*, n.; *aedēs, aedis*, f.
ten, *decem*, indecl. card. adj.
tend, *pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus;* **tendency of = to what it pertains**, *quō pertinēre.*
tent, *tabernāculum, tabernāculī*, n.
Terentia, *Terentia, Terentiae*, f.
territory, *fīnēs, finium*, m.; *agrī, agrōrum*, m.
Thales, *Thales, Thalis* or *Thalētis*, m.
than, *quam* conj. (67).
thank, *grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctus.*
thanksgiving, *supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis*, f.
that, *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; ut* (206–210); *quīn* (276); **that of yours**, *iste, ista, istud.*
Thebes, *Thēbae, Thēbārum*, f.
their (their own), *suus, a, um*, referring to the subject, but agreeing with the object possessed; *eōrum, eārum, eōrum; hōrum, hārum, hōrum; illōrum, illārum, illōrum*, may be used to express *their* not referring to the subject.
themselves, *ipsī, ae, a*, intens. pron.; *sē*, reflex. pron.
then, *tum*, adv.; *deinde*, adv. (304).
theoretical knowledge, *ratiō et doctrīna* (18) (*ratiō, ratiōnis*, f.; *doctrīna, doctrīnae*, f.).
there, *ibi*, adv.; the English expletive *there* is not to be rendered in Latin.
therefore, *itaque* (349–351).
Thermopylae, *Thermopylae, Thermopylārum*, f.
Thespians, *Thespiēnsēs, Thespiēnsium*, m.
Thessalonica, *Thessalonīca, Thessalonīcae*, f.
Thessaly, *Thessalia, Thessaliae*, f.
thing, *rēs, reī*, f.
think, *putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus* (278).
third, *tertius, a, um.*
thirteen, *tredecim*, indecl. card. adj.
thirty, *trīginta*, indecl. card. adj.
this, *hīc, haec, hoc; is, ea, id;* **this being the case**, *quae cum ita sint.*
thousand, *mīlle* (87).
Thrace, *Thrācia, Thrāciae*, f.
threaten, *minor, minārī, minātus sum.*
three, *trēs, tria;* **three thousand**, *tria mīlia*, w. gen.; **three hundred**, *trecentī, ae, a.*
throne, *solium, soliī*, n.; *rēgnum, rēgnī*, n.
through, *per*, prep. w. acc.
throw, *iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus;* **throw back**, *reiciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus;* **throw into**, *iniciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus.*
thus, *sīc*, adv.; *ita*, adv.
Thymoetes, *Thymoetēs, Thymoetae*, m.
Tiber, *Tiberis, Tiberis*, m.
tide, *aestus, aestūs*, m.
Tigranes, *Tigrānēs, Tigrānis*, m.
Tigranocerta, *Tigranocerta, Tigranocertae*, f.
timber, *māteria, māteriae*, f.

time, *tempus, temporis*, n.; at times, *nōnnumquam*.
timidity, *timor, timōris*, m.; *metus, metūs*, m.
tire, *fatīgō, fatīgāre, fatīgāvī, fatīgātus; taedet, taedēre, taeduit* or *taesum est*.
Titan, *Tītān, Tītānis*, m.
"tit for tat" = returning like for like, *pār pārī referre* (*referō, referre, retulī, relātus*).
to, *ad*, prep. w. acc.
toga, *toga, togae*, f.
tomb, *sepulcrum, sepulcrī*, n.
tongue, *lingua, linguae*, f.
top of, *summus, a, um* (95).
torture, *cruciātus, cruciātūs*, m.; torture some one to death, *aliquem, omnī suppliciō excruciātum necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus*.
touch upon, *attingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus*.
toward, *ad*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep. w. acc.
tower, *turris, turris*, f.
town, *oppidum, oppidī*, n.
tradition asserts, *fāma trādītum est* (*fāma, ae*, f.; *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus*).
Trajan, *Trāiānus, Trāiānī*, m.
Transalpine, *Trānsalpīnus, a, um*.
transfer, *trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus*.
transport, *trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductus; trānsportō, trānsportāre, trānsportāvī, trānsportātus*.
travel, *eō, īre, iī, itus; iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*.
treacherous, *callidus, a, um*.
treason, *prōditiō, prōditiōnis*, f.
treasures, *gāza, gāzae*, f.
treat with respect, *summō honōre habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus*.
treaty, *foedus, foederis*, n.
tree, *arbor* or *arbōs, arboris*, f.
Triarius, *Triārius, Triārī*, m.
tribe, *tribus, tribūs*, f.
tribune, *tribūnus, tribūnī*, m.; military tribune, *tribūnus mīlitum*; tribune of the commons, *tribūnus plēbis*.
trick, *dolus, dolī*, m.
trip, *iter, itineris*, n.
tripod, *tripus, tripodis*, m.
triumph, *triumphus, triumphī*, m.; *triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī, triumphātus*.
triumvirs, *triumvirī, triumvirōrum*, m.
Trojan, *Troiānus, a, um*; Trojans, *Troiānī, Troiānōrum*, m.
troops, *cōpiae, cōpiārum*, f.
troubled, *maestus, a, um*; *in dolōre sum, esse, fuī, futūrus*.
Troy, *Trōia, Trōiae*, f.
true, *vērus, a, um*; it is true, *quidem; vērum* (338).
trumpet, *tuba, tubae*, f.
trust, *crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus*.
try, *cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum*.
Tucca, *Tucca, Tuccae*, m.
Tullianum, *Tulliānum, Tulliānī*, n.
Tullius, *Tullius, Tullī*, m.
turma, *turma, turmae*, f.
turn, *vertō, vertere, vertī, versus*; turn away, *āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus*; turn around, *circumvertō, circumvertere, circumvertī, circumversus*.
Tusculum, *Tusculum, Tusculī*, n.
twelfth, *duodecimus, a, um*.
twelve, *duodecim*, indecl. card. adj.

twenty, *vīgintī*, indecl. card. adj.
twice, *bis*, adv.
twins, *geminī*, *geminōrum*, m. and f.
two, *duo*, *ae*, *o*; two days, *biduum*, *biduī*, n.
two hundred, *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*.
tyrannically, *rēgiē*, adv.
tyrant, *tyrannus*, *tyrannī*, m.
'twixt, *inter*, prep. w. acc.: "'twixt cup and lip, there's many a slip," *inter ōs atque offam multa intervenīre possunt.*

U

unavailing = in vain, *frūstrā*, adv.; *nēquīquam*, adv.
uncertain, *incertus*, *a*, *um*.
uncle, *avunculus*, *avunculī*, m.
under, *sub*, prep. w. acc. and abl. (322).
underground, *subterraneus*, *a*, *um*.
understand, *intellegō*, *intellegere*, *intellēxī*, *intellēctus*.
undertake, *suscipiō*, *suscipere*, *suscēpī*, *susceptus*.
undoubtedly, *profectō*; *sānē*.
uneven, *impar*, gen. *impāris*, adj.
unfavorable, *aliēnus*, *a*, *um*.
ungrateful, *ingrātus*, *a*, *um*.
unite, *coniūngō*, *coniūngere*, *coniūnxī*, *coniūnctus*.
unjust, *inīquus*, *a*, *um*.
unknown, *īgnōtus*, *a*, *um*.
unless, *nisi*, conj. (215).
unlike, *dissimilis*, *dissimile*.
unoccupied, *vacuus*, *a*, *um*; be unoccupied, *vacō*, *vacāre*, *vacāvī*, *vacātus*.
unsuspicious, *nōn suspicāx*, gen. *suspicācis*; *nihil suspicāns*, gen. *suspicantis*.
until, *dum*, conj. (250; 251); until morning, *ad prīmam lūcem*.
unto, *ad*, prep. w. acc.
unusual, *insolitus*, *a*, *um*.
unwilling, *invītus*, *a*, *um*; be unwilling, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, —.
upper, *superior*, *superius*.
uprightness, *integritās*, *integritātis*, f.
urge, *hortor*, *hortārī*, *hortātus sum*; *impellō*, *impellere*, *impulī*, *impulsus*.
use, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*, w. abl.; noun, *ūsus*, *ūsūs*, m.
useful, *ūtilis*, *ūtile*.
utensils, *ūtēnsilia*, *ūtēnsilium*, n.
utter, *ēloquor*, *ēloquī*, *ēlocūtus sum*.

V

vain (in), *frūstrā*, adv.; *nēquīquam*, adv.
valiant, *fortis*, *forte*.
valley, *vallēs* or *vallis*, *vallis*, f.
valor, *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f.
valuable, *pretiōsus*, *a*, *um*.
value, *exīstimō*, *exīstimāre*, *exīstimāvī*, *exīstimātus*.
various, *varius*, *a*, *um*.
Varius, *Varius*, *Varī*, m.
vast, *vāstus*, *a*, *um*; *maximus*, *a*, *um*; *ingēns*, *ingentis*.
Vatican, *Vaticānus*, *Vaticānī*, m.
vengeance, *supplicium*, *supplicī*, n.
Venus, *Venus*, *Veneris*, f.
Vergilius, *Publius Vergilius Marō*, gen. *Publī Vergilī Marōnis*, m.
verse, *carmen*, *carminis*, n.; versed in the art of war, *perītus reī mīlitāris*; versed in politics, *in rē pūblicā dīrigendā versātus*.
very, *ipse*, *a*, *um*, intens. pron.; *valdē*, adv. Express by the superlative.
vessel, *nāvis*, *nāvis*, f.

Vesta, *Vesta, Vestae*, f.
veterans, *veterānī, veterānōrum*, m.
veto, *intercessiō, intercessiōnis*, f.; *vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus.*
viator, *viātor, viātōris*, m.
victor, *victor, victōris*, m.
victory, *victōria, victōriae*, f.
view, *dēspectus, dēspectūs*, m.
villa, *villa, villae*, f.
village, *vīcus, vīcī*, m.
violate, *violō, violāre, violāvī, violātus*; violate every divine obligation, *omne fās abrumpō, abrumpere, abrūpī, abruptus.*
violence, *vīs, vīs*, f.
violent grief, *vīs ac dolor* (*dolor, dolōris*, m.); violent tempest, *magna tempestās*, gen. *magnae tempestātis*, f.
virgin, *virgō, virginis*, f.
voice, *vōx, vōcis*, f.
vote, *cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus.*
vow, *vōtum, vōtī*, n.; *voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus.*
Vulcan, *Vulcānus, Vulcānī*, m.

W

wage war, *bellum gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus.*
wagon, *carrus, carrī*, m.
wait for, *exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātus.*
wall, *mūrus, mūrī*, m.; wall of a house, *pariēs, parietis*, m.; walls of a town, *moenia, moenium*, n.
wander, *vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum.*
wanting (be), *absum, abesse, āfuī, abfutūrus.*
war, *bellum, bellī*, n.; *bellō, bellāre, bellāvī, bellātus*; begin war, *in bellum ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum.*
watch, *cūstōs, cūstodis*, m.
water, *aqua, aquae*, f.; *inrigō, inrigāre, inrigāvī, inrigātus.*
way, *via, viae*, f.
wealthy, *opulentus, a, um.*
weapon, *tēlum, tēlī*, n.
wear, *gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus.*
weight, *auctōritās, auctōritātis*, f.; have weight or influence, *multum possum, posse, potuī, —*; *multum valeō, valēre, valuī.*
well, *bene*, adv.; *validus, a, um*; well? *quid vērō?* (163); be well, *valeō, valēre, valuī.*
what, *quī, quae, quod*, rel. pron.; *quis, quid*, inter. pron.; whatever, *quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.*
when, *ubi*, adv.; *cum*, conj. (237–241).
where, *ubi*, adv. with verb of rest; *quō*, adv. with verb of motion.
whether, *sī; num; -ne; utrum* (170; 171; 336).
which, *quī, quae, quod*, rel. pron.; *quis, quid*, inter. pron.; which of two, *uter, utra, utrum*, gen. *utrīus*, dat. *utrī.*
while, *dum* (248); a little while after, *paulō post* (60).
white, *albus, a, um*, opp. of *āter, ātra ātrum*; *candidus, a, um*, opp. of *niger, nigra, nigrum.*
whither, *quō?* adv.; *quem ad locum?*
who, *quī, quae*, rel. pron.; *quis*, inter. pron.
whoever, *quīcumque, quaecumque.*
whole, *tōtus, a, um*, gen. *tōtīus*, dat. *tōtī.*
why, *cūr*, adv.; *quid?* (159).

wicked, *improbus, a, um.*
wide, *lātus, a, um.*
wife, *coniūnx, coniugis,* f.; *uxor, uxōris,* f.
will and testament, *testāmentum, testāmentī,* n.; against one's will, *invītus, a, um.*
willing, *volēns, volentis;* be willing, *volō, velle, voluī,* —.
win, *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus* (84).
wind, *ventus, ventī,* m.
winter, *hiems, hiemis,* f.; *hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātus.*
wisdom, *sapientia, sapientiae,* f.; *cōnsilium, cōnsiliī,* n.
wise, *sapiēns,* gen. *sapientis* (33).
wish, *volō, velle, voluī,* —; *cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus.*
with, *cum,* prep. w. abl. (316; 310).
withdraw, *excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessus; cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātus,* w. acc. of pers. or reflex. pron.
within, *intrā,* prep. w. acc.
without, *sine,* prep. w. abl. (200; 317).
withstand, *sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus.*
witness, *testis, testis,* m. and f. (18).
woman, *fēmina, fēminae,* f.; *mulier, mulieris,* f.; old woman, *anus, anūs,* f.
wonder, *mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum.*
woolen, *lānātus, a, um.*
word, *verbum, verbī,* n.
work, *labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātus;* noun, *opus, operis,* n.; *labor, labōris,* m.; work for the interest of, *cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus,* w. dat.
workmanship, *opus, operis,* n.; *manus, manūs,* f.
world, *orbis terrae* or *terrārum* (*orbis, orbis,* m.; *terra, terrae,* f.); in the world's history, *post hominum memoriam.*
worship, *adōrātiō, adōrātiōnis,* f.; *veneror, venerārī, venerātus sum.*
worth, *pretium, pretiī,* n.; be worth much, *magnī sum, esse, fuī, futūrus* (34).
worthy, *dignus, a, um.*
would that, *utinam,* interj. (273).
wretched, *miser, misera, miserum.*
write, *scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.*
writer, *scrīptor, scrīptōris,* m. and f.
wrong-doing, *maleficium, maleficiī,* n.

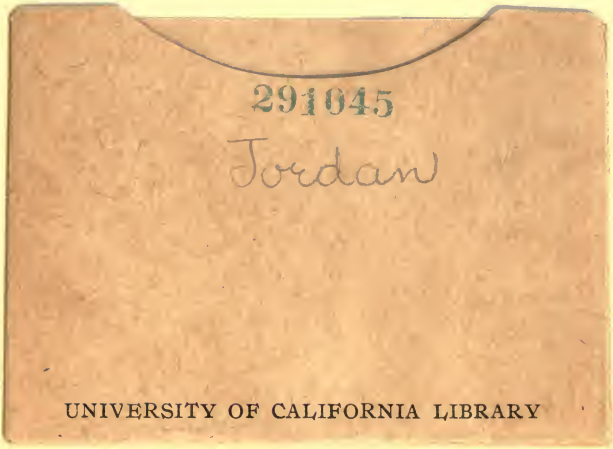
X

Xerxes, *Xerxēs, Xerxis,* m.

Y

year, *annus, annī,* m.
yearly, *quotannīs,* adv.
yes indeed, *immō vērō.*
yet, *tamen,* conj. (342); and yet, *quamquam,* conj.; not yet, *nōndum,* adv.
young, *iuvenis,* gen. *iuvenis,* adj.; *adolēscēns,* gen. *adolēscentis,* adj.
your, *tuus, a, um,* poss. pron. showing one owner, and agreeing in gender, number, and case with the object possessed; *vester, vestra, vestrum,* showing more than one owner, and agreeing with the object possessed.
yourself, *tū ipse* or *ipsa,* gen. *tuī ipsīus* (*tū,* pers. pron.; *ipse, ipsa,* intens. pron.).

YB 41215


291045
Jordan
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY